Conference for Food Protection – Committee FINAL Report

Template approved: 08/14/2013

Committee Final Reports are considered DRAFT until deliberated and acknowledged by the assigned Council at the Biennial Meeting

COMMITTEE NAME: Listeria Retail Guidelines (LRG) Committee

COUNCIL or EXECUTIVE BOARD ASSIGNMENT: Council III

DATE OF REPORT: November 20, 2015

SUBMITTED BY: Tom Ford and Don Schaffner (co-chairs)

COMMITTEE CHARGE(s):

Issue: 2014 III-008

The Conference recommends the re-creation of the *Listeria* Retail Guidelines Committee. The committee will be charged to revise the "2006 Voluntary Guidelines of Sanitation Practices Standard Operating Procedures and Good Retail Practices to Minimize Contamination and Growth of *Listeria monocytogenes* Within Food Establishments" to include:

1) sanitation guidance for equipment and food establishment environments,
2) good retail practices on how to prevent contamination and growth of Lm in retail establishment,
3) updated outdated links to other documents, and
4) information from and references to documents published by credible organizations on the topic of Lm prevention and control in food establishments.

The Conference also recommends that the committee report its recommendations back to the 2016 Biennial Meeting with Issues to address:

1) the above charges, and
2) recommendations that a letter be sent to FDA requesting that Annex 2 (References, Part 3-Supporting Documents) be amended by adding a reference to the revised voluntary guidelines.

COMMITTEE ACTIVITIES AND RECOMMENDATIONS:

1. Progress on Overall Committee Activities: The committee met monthly beginning in October 2014 and reviewed, discussed and amended the draft 2014 Guidelines (a revision of the 2006 guidelines) that were never formally submitted to CFP by the 2012-2014 Committee. A quorum was present at almost every meeting, an open and frank dialogue was maintained at every meeting with input from all attendees. The final draft guidelines were accepted by a majority vote of the voting members. All charges were successfully achieved.

   The committee decided to use the never finalized draft document arising from the deliberations of the 2012-2014 committee, as it's starting point. Small changes were made

to almost every paragraph in the document. Entirely new paragraphs were added to many sections, often incorporating new information and/or references into the text.
For example:

a) The introduction to the revised document added significant text discussion the Interagency Retail *Listeria monocytogenes* Risk Assessment Workgroup risk assessment on *L. monocytogenes* in retail delicatessens that was published in 2013.
b) The Cleaning and Sanitizing section of the document now contains separate sections on cleaning, cleaning frequencies and sanitizers.
c) The Time and Temperature Control section of the document contains added information on consumer advice, as well as *Listeria* control via pH modification and preservative use.
d) A new section on the risks posed by remodeling was added to the Preventing Contamination section.
e) The section on verifying the effectiveness of sanitation programs was expanded significantly, adding sections on validation, monitoring and supplemental verification methods.
f) Entirely new sections on Supplier Specifications and Recalls were added to the document.
g) The formatting of the entire document was standardized using consistent MS Word styles for paragraphs and headers.

2. Recommendations for consideration by Council: The Committee recommends that the -2016 Draft "Voluntary Guidelines of Sanitation Practices Standard Operating Procedures and Good Retail Practices to Minimize Contamination and Growth of *Listeria monocytogenes* (*Lm*) Within Food Establishments" be accepted as submitted and posted on the CFP website.

3. The committee recommends that since the charges have been met, the committee disband.

CFP ISSUES TO BE SUBMITTED BY COMMITTEE:

1) Report - Listeria Retail Guidelines (LRG) Committee
2) LRG 2 Voluntary Guidelines of Sanitation Practices…, Second Edition
to approve the "2016 Voluntary Guidelines of Sanitation Practices Standard Operating Procedures and Good Retail Practices to Minimize Contamination and Growth of *Listeria monocytogenes* (*Lm*) Within Food Establishments, Second Edition"

Content Document Attachments:

- Listeria Retail Guidelines (LRG) Committee Roster
- Draft 2016 Voluntary Guidelines of Sanitation Practices Standard Operating Procedures and Good Retail Practices to Minimize Contamination and Growth of *Listeria monocytogenes* (Lm) within Food Establishments, Second Edition

COMMITTEE MEMBER ROSTER (attached):

Listeria Retail Guidelines (LRG) Committee Roster

Committee Name:

Committee Name: 2014 - 2016 Listeria Retail Guidelines Committee - Council III

Last Name	First Name	Position (Chair/Member)	Constituency	Employer	City	State	Telephone	Email
Schaffner	Donald	Co-Chair	Co-chair, Academia	Rutgers University	Freehold	NJ	(732) 982-7475	schaffner@aesop.rutgers.edu
Ford	Thomas	Co-Chair	Co-chair, Industry, Support	Ecolab	Greensboro	NC	(336) 931-2209	tom.ford@ecolab.com
Hernandez	Erik	Member	Industry, Processing	Boar's Head	Brooklyn	NY	718-456-3600 x1385	erik.hernandez@boarshead.com
Dykman	Laura	Member	Industry, Retail	Harmons Grocery	Salt Lake City	UT	(801) 957-8472	lauradykman@harmonsgrocery.com
Jennings	Allison	Member	Industry, Retail	Amazon	Seattle	WA	206-435-8625	Jennings, Allison <jealliso@amazon.com>
Kohl	Larry	Member	Industry, Retail	Delhaize America	Salisbury	NC	(704) 310-4149	Larry.Kohl@delhaize.com
McGuffey	Charles E.	Member	Industry, Retail	7-Eleven, Inc.	Dallas	TX	(972) 828-6844	charles.mcguffey@7-11.com
Seaman	Chuck	Member	Industry, Retail	Hy-Vee, Inc.	West Des Moines	IA	(515) 559-5736	cseaman@hy-vee.com
Tryba	Casimir M.	Member	Industry, Retail	Big Y Foods, Inc.	Springfield	MA	(413) 504-4450	tryba@bigy.com
Grinstead	Dale	Member	Industry, Support	Diversey	Sturtevant	WI	(262) 631-4433	dale.grinstead@sealedair.com
Hollingsworth	Jill	Member	Industry, Support	Food Safety Consultant				1jillh@gmail.com
Kowalczyk	Susan	Member	Regulator, Local	DuPage County Health	Wheaton	IL	(630) 221-7396	skowalcz@dupagehealth.org
Leber	Lindsey	Member	Regulator, Local	Huron County Public Health	Norwalk	OH	419-668-1652 Ext. 265	lleber@huroncohealth.com
Anderson	Timothy	Member	Regulator, State	WI, DoA, Div. Food Safety	Madison	WI	(608) 224-4716	timothy.anderson@wi.gov
Clendenin	Karla	Member	Regulator, State	FL, DACS	Tallahassee	FL		Karla.Clendenin@FreshFromFlorida.com
Johnson	Brian	Member	Regulator, State	RI Health Department	Providence	RI	(401) 222-7726	brian.johnson@health.ri.gov
Schvaneveldt	Jay	Member	Regulator, State	Utah DAF	Salt Lake City	UT	(801) 538-7149	nschvaneveldt@utah.gov
Brown	Bob	At Large	Retail Food Industry	Whole Foods Market	Austin	TX	(512) 944-7405	robert.brown@wholefoods.com
Cranford	Vanessa	At Large	Industry, Processing	Taylor Farms Florida	Orlando	FL	(407) 495-7333	vcranford@taylorfarms.com
Ewell	Harold	At Large	Food Industry Support	N2N Global	Longwood	FL	(412) 418-7018	ewell8194@comcast.net
Gilardi	Linda	At Large	Industry, Food Service	Compass Group	Charlotte	NC	(704) 328-3194	Linda.Gilardi@compass-usa.com
Gregro	Susan	At Large	Food Service Industry	Sodexo	Sinking Springs	PA	(610) 509-1796	susan.gregro@sodexo.com
O'Donnell	James	At Large	Food Industry Support	Hussmann Corporation	Bridgeton	MO	(314) 298-4778	james.odonnell@hussmann.com
O'Donnell-Cahill	Kathleen	At Large	Retail Food Industry	Wegmans Food Markets, Inc.	Rochester	NY	585-429-3623	Kathleen Odonnell-Cahil@wegmans.com
Pocius	Joseph	At Large	Processing Food Industry	Boar's Head Provisions	Petersburg	VA	(941) 685-5575	joseph.pocius@boarshead.com
Thesmar	Hillary	At Large	Food Industry Support	Food Marketing Institute	Arlington	VA	(202) 220-0658	hthesmar@fmi.org
Hale	Aggie	CFP Staff						
Rossow	Todd	Council chair						
Sarrocco-Smith	Davene	Council vice chair						
Barlow	Kristie	Member - Consultant	Federal Regulator	USDA FSIS	Washington	DC	202-690-7739	Barlow, Kristina - FSIS <Kristina.Barlow@fsis.usda.gov>
Jackson	Kelly	Member - Consultant	Federal	CDC			404-639-4603	gqv8@cdc.gov
Parish	Mickey	Member - Consultant	Federal Regulator	USFDA/CFSAN	College Park	MD	301-436-1728	mickey.parish@fda.hhs.gov
Webb	Brad	Member - Consultant	Federal Regulator	USDA FSIS	Athens	GA	706-546-2341	Brad.Webb@fsis.usda.gov
Williams	Laurie	Member - Consultant	Federal Regulator	USFDA/CFSAN	College Park	MD	(240) 402-2938	laurie.williams@fda.hhs.gov

Sanitation Practices Standard Operating Procedures and Good Retail Practices to Minimize Contamination and Growth of *Listeria monocytogenes* within Food Establishments

Second Edition

Originally Produced By: *Listeria monocytogenes* Intervention Committee of Council III 2004-2006 Conference for Food Protection

Current Edition By: *Listeria monocytogenes* Guidelines Committees of Council III 2012-2014 and 2014-2016 Conference for Food Protection

Table of contents

Acknowledgements 3
Introduction 4
Targeted Sanitation Procedures 5
Food Contact surfaces 5
Non-Food Contact surfaces 6
Other items 6
Cleaning and Sanitizing 7
Additional Miscellaneous Cleaning Information 8
Time and Temperature Control 9
Temperature Control for Receiving 9
Refrigeration and Freezer Units – Holding, Storage and Display 10
Time/Temperature Controls – Product Handling 10
Controls Other Than Time and Temperature 12
Preventing Cross-Contamination 12
Preventing Cross Contamination of Ready-To-Eat Foods by Raw Foods 12
Preventing Contamination of Ready-To-Eat Foods From Other Sources 13
Remodeling 14
Employee Practices and Training 14
Employee Practices 14
Employee Training 15
Verifying the Effectiveness of Sanitation Programs 15
Validation 16
Verification 16
Monitoring 16
Supplemental verification methods 17
Rapid Sanitation Tests 17
Microbiological Testing 17
Supplier Specifications 18
Recalls 19

Acknowledgements

2004-2006 *Listeria* Intervention Committee:
Cas Tryba, Co-Chair Big Y Foods, Inc.
Frank Greene, Co-Chair CT Department of Consumer Protection
Jill Hollingsworth, Food Marketing Institute
Joseph Corby, NY Department of Agriculture and Markets
Deborah Marlow, Field Operations and Enforcement, Retail Foods Division Texas Department of Health
Karen Reid, West Hartford-Bloomfield Health District
Kenneth Rosenwinkel, Jewel-Osco (Albertson‘s)
Roger Coffman, Lake County Health Department
Pam Williams, Yum!Brands, Inc.
Jan McCabe/Todd Rossow, Publix Super Markets, Inc.
Thomas P. Ford, Ecolab
Paul Uhler, TAS, Office of Policy, Program and Employee Development FSIS
Heather Hicks, Quesenberry (USDA lead) USDA-FSIS
Jenny Scott, Food Products Association
Richard H. Linton, Purdue University
Wayne Derstine, FL Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services
Mike Magner, Sheetz, Inc.
Thomas M. Foegle, Brinker International
William E. McCullough, Arby‘s Inc.
Sheri Dove, PA Department of Agriculture
Thomas L. Schwarz, International Inflight Food Service Association
Jon Woody, (FDA Lead) Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition U.S. FDA
Shirley Bohm, Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition U.S. FDA

2012-2014 *Listeria* guidelines Committee:
Catherine Addams-Hutt, NRA
Kristina Barlow, Member, USDA
William Henry Blade, RI Dep. Of Health
Matthew Colson, FL Dep. of Ag.
Michelle Danyluk, University of Florida
Thomas Ford, Ecolab
Christopher Gordon, VA Dep. Of Health
Dale Grinstead, Sealed Air
David Konop, Target
Sue Kowalczyk, Dupage Co. Dep of health
Larry Kohl, Delhaze
Kathleen O'Donnell, Wegman's
Haley F. Oliver, Purdue Univ.
Mickey Parish, FDA
Chuck Seaman, Hy-Vee
Katherine Simon, MN Dep of Health
Hilary Thesmar, FMI
Laurie Williams, FDA
Sharon Wood, HEB
Neil Ylanan, LSG Sky Chef

2014-2016 *Listeria* guidelines Committee:
Thomas Ford, Co-Chair, Ecolab
Donald Schaffner, Co-Chair, Rutgers University
Timothy Anderson, WI, DoA, Div. Food Safety
Kristie Barlow, USDA FSIS
Bob Brown, Whole Foods Market
Karla Clendenin, FL, DACS
Vanessa Cranford, Taylor Farms Florida
Laura Dykman, Harmons Grocery
Harold Ewell, N2N Global
Linda Gilardi, Compass Group
Susan Gregro, Sodexo
Dale Grinstead, Diversey
Erik Hernandez, Boar's Head
Jill Hollingsworth, Food Safety Consultant
Kelly Jackson, CDC
Allison Jennings, Amazon
Brian Johnson, RI Health Department
Larry Kohl, Delhaize America
Susan Kowalczyk, DuPage County Health
Lindsey Leber, Huron County Public Health
Charles E. McGuffey, 7-Eleven, Inc.
James O'Donnell, Hussmann Corporation
Kathleen O'Donnell-Cahill, Wegmans Food Markets, Inc.
Mickey Parish, USFDA/CFSAN
Joseph Pocius, Boar's Head Provisions
Todd Rossow, Council III Chair, Publix
Davene Sarrocco-Smith, Council III, Vice Chair Lake County Public Health District
Jay Schvaneveldt, Utah DAF
Chuck Seaman, Hy-Vee, Inc.
Hillary Thesmar, Food Marketing Institute
Casimir M. Tryba, Big Y Foods, Inc.
Brad Webb, USDA FSIS
Laurie Williams, USFDA/CFSA

Introduction

Listeria monocytogenes is a bacterium that can cause listeriosis, a serious disease that is primarily transmitted through foods and that can be introduced into foods at multiple points in the food chain. Despite the wide occurrence of *L. monocytogenes* in homes, in foods, in food manufacturing facilities and in food establishments, the incidence of listeriosis in the U.S. is low with an estimated 1,591 foodborne disease cases per year and 255 deaths (Scallan et al., 2011) and details on recent *L. monocytogenes* multistate outbreaks can be found on CDCs website. Extensive controls in the manufacturing of ready-to-eat foods have been responsible, in part, for reducing contamination of foods and a decreasing incidence of listeriosis.

Food establishments as defined by the FDA 2013 Food Code are very different from food processing plants. Food establishments are defined by the Food Code to be retail and foodservice establishments like grocery stores and restaurants. This guidance document is written to be relevant for all food establishments. They are open to the public, with customers, employees and others (e.g., contractors, delivery personnel) coming into the food establishment throughout the day. These situations increase the opportunity for *L. monocytogenes* to be introduced. Therefore, it is very important that food establishment operators utilize active managerial control (AMC) to implement appropriate procedures that minimize the potential for *L. monocytogenes* contamination of ready-to-eat foods within their food establishment.

Vigilant AMC is a key part in reducing the risk of listeriosis. AMC means the purposeful incorporation of specific actions or procedures by establishment management into the operation of their business to attain control over foodborne illness risk factors, as defined in the 2013 Food Code Annex 4, on pg. 549. It embodies a preventive rather than reactive approach to food safety through a continuous system of risk assessment, monitoring, and verification. Every food establishment needs to have AMC of risk factors associated with foodborne illness. This may be achieved through training programs, manager oversight and standard operating procedures. For example, some establishments incorporate control measures into individual recipes, production schedules, or employee job descriptions.

The FDA/Food Safety and Inspection Service (FSIS) 2003 *L. monocytogenes* Risk Assessment categorized the relative risk of ready-to-eat foods with respect to foodborne listeriosis. Ready-to-eat (RTE) foods were placed into categories ranging from very high to very low risk. The risk assessment identified very high and high risk foods to include: deli meats, unheated frankfurters, soft un-ripened cheeses, high fat and other dairy products, pasteurized fluid milk, pâté, meat spreads, unpasteurized fluid milk and smoked seafood. Food establishment operators could use these categories to identify specific foods and related areas and equipment within their establishments that should be the focus for *Listeria* control measures. It is important to note that the risk assessment did not address all ready-to-eat foods and any food that supports the growth of *L. monocytogenes* may have the potential to cause listeriosis.

The USDA FSIS/FDA Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition (CFSAN) Interagency Retail *Listeria monocytogenes* Risk Assessment Workgroup published a more recent risk assessment focused on *L. monocytogenes* in retail delicatessens in 2013. The purpose of the risk assessment was to provide a quantitative, scientific assessment of the risk of listeriosis posed by consumption of RTE foods prepared and sold in delicatessens inside of retail food stores and to mathematically model how that risk might be impacted by changes in practice.

There were five key findings from the 2013 risk assessment regarding the control of *Listeria:* (i) Practices that prevent bacterial growth dramatically reduced the predicted risk of listeriosis. (ii) Cross contamination by *L. monocytogenes* in the retail environment dramatically increased the predicted risk of listeriosis. (iii) Increasing *L. monocytogenes* concentration in incoming product increased the predicted risk of listeriosis, whether or not the contaminated RTE product itself supported growth. (iv) Sanitation practices that eliminate *L. monocytogenes* from food-contact surfaces resulted in a reduction in the predicted risk of illness. (v) Control of *L. monocytogenes* cross contamination at the slicer reduced the predicted risk of listeriosis.

Risk factors may be managed in a variety of ways; however, some food establishments may want to develop written records to ensure that monitoring is being performed using the correct method and at the proper frequency and that corrective actions are taken immediately. To minimize the risk of listeriosis, food establishment operators should know their suppliers and only buy foods from approved sources; keep refrigerated foods as cold as possible and limit their storage time; take steps to prevent contamination during in-store handling and storage; and target sanitation procedures to those areas most likely to harbor *L. monocytogenes*. Specific information on controlling *L. monocytogenes* in food establishments, with emphasis on these areas, is provided in this document.

Targeted Sanitation Procedures

L. monocytogenes can be found almost everywhere and may be present in food establishments. Sanitation is an important means of controlling *L. monocytogenes*.

When developing a sanitation program, specific areas and equipment should be targeted. Scientific studies have shown specific areas and equipment can provide niches and harbor *Listeria* or are more vulnerable to *Listeria* contamination. The items listed below are not exclusive and every operator should identify specific risk areas and priorities within their own operation.

Food Contact surfaces

- Slicers
- Cutting boards
- Knives, knife racks, tubs, bowls, platters and utensils
- Food containers and trays in display cases and refrigerators

- Food contact surfaces inside display cases

Non-Food Contact surfaces

- Floors, walls, coving and drains in preparation areas
- The interior of display cases and walk in coolers, specifically condensate, drip pans, drains, door tracks, light housings and bottom decks over fans and condensers
- Cleaning tools for food contact surfaces, such as brushes and cleaning cloths
- Cleaning tools such as mops, buckets and squeegees
- Three compartment sink
- Wet floors, standing water
- Prep sinks
- Floor wall juncture below and adjacent to sink drains
- Storage containers, including milk crates

Other items

Additionally, other items should be considered when developing a targeted sanitation program for *Listeria*. These may include:

- Door handles and handles of equipment
- Pallets, pallet jacks
- Push carts, especially the wheels
- Exterior of equipment or unused equipment
- Maintenance tools
- Non- disposable gloves, such as cleaning or safety gloves
- Ceilings
- Hollow table and/or equipment legs and supports
- Seams and seals around cooler, freezer and refrigerator doors
- Trash containers
- Air filters, blowers, vents and fans
- Motor housings on food processing equipment
- Unsealed joints in food preparation areas, such as riveted information tags or plates on equipment
- Scales
- Food wrapping machines
- Hand contact surfaces, such as on-off switches, knobs, handles, phones and intercoms
- Hoses and nozzles
- Ice machines and the drain areas under and behind ice machines
- Drain back-ups, toilet back-ups and roof leaks

The following should be properly installed, maintained and in good repair:

- Floors, coving and walls
- Gaskets and rubber seals in equipment and around doors

- Condensation units and drain lines
- Hoses
- Drains

Storing defective and unused equipment in food preparation areas and bringing in used equipment from another location to replace broken equipment, all raise potential *Listeria* concerns due to the potential for harborage and cross-contamination.

Cleaning and Sanitizing

Practices

The primary focus of cleaning and sanitizing should be on sources most likely to cause contamination in high-risk food preparation areas, as identified in the food contact and non-food contact sections above.

All equipment should be easily cleanable and free of defects. Equipment should comply with the specifications listed in the FDA and CFP Food Establishment Plan Review Guide.

Cleaning effectiveness depends upon the cleaning compound formulation and use conditions as well as and various other issues. Those issues are specific to the type of cleaning being attempted, the type of soil, water hardness, tools used, the training and execution of the procedure by the person doing the cleaning. A food establishment should implement written procedures for proper cleaning and sanitizing food contact and non-food contact surfaces. These procedures should include the frequency of cleaning, chemicals to use, instructions on how to perform the task and the steps to verify it is being done correctly. A visual examination should be done of all food contact surfaces before the start of operations to ensure appropriate compliance with cleaning procedures and to take corrective actions if necessary.

Cleaners

All cleaners used in a food establishment should have a product description, instructions on how to use the product, an effective concentration and safety information. Cleaners should be used according to a Sanitation Standard Operating Procedure (SSOP) specific to a location or piece of equipment being cleaned.

Cleaning Frequencies

A cleaning schedule should be developed for each establishment to include all food and non-food contact surfaces. Follow equipment manufacturer's instructions to assure complete disassembly and thorough cleaning of all equipment parts. Recommended cleaning and sanitizing frequencies are listed in the FDA Food Code.

Consider cleaning as you go and remove food spills quickly. Bacteria like cool damp areas; so limiting standing water helps control *L. monocytogenes* and most other bacteria. Bacteria from wet areas can easily be transferred to employee shoes, carts or

other equipment if not wiped up quickly.

Sanitizers

All sanitizers used in a food establishment should have a product description, instructions on how to use the product, an effective concentration and safety information. Sanitizing agents must be used in accordance with EPA-registered manufacturers label use instructions. Appropriate test kits should be available and in use. Effective sanitization can be achieved only when preceded by thorough cleaning and rinsing steps. The cleaning and sanitizing procedures should also include floor drains in food preparation areas (e.g., remove the drain cover and basket; remove all debris and discard into the trash container, use an appropriate procedure to remove organic material from the drain hole). Enzymatic cleaners may also be effective in removing organic material, prior to sanitation. Use an EPA registered product to sanitize the floor and drain area. Consider using bactericidal drain rings in drains located where ready-to-eat food is prepared and stored.

Additional Miscellaneous Cleaning Information

Minimize splash from hoses into floor drains. Plugged drains should be repaired immediately. Do not place equipment over floor drains, as this practice would make it difficult to clean the floor drain and could result in equipment contamination during cleaning or drain backups. Consider using 'best practices' when cleaning drains (e.g., controlling splash, use a drain brush with bristles smaller than the diameter of the drain line, clean/sanitize the drain brush itself).

Only a dry cleanup (i.e., clean up without the use of water) should be done during food production. Splash from a wet cleanup can easily contaminate a cleaned surface. Splash can aerosolize and spread contamination throughout the entire area. Avoid mid-shift wet cleanup because it can produce aerosols and add water in the food preparation area.

Use only low pressure or foaming hoses rather than high-pressure sprays. Do not use low-pressure hoses for cleaning during food preparation or when there is any exposed food, equipment, utensils or food packaging. Low-pressure foaming guns and sanitizer rinse guns may be used only after removal or protection of all foods, previously cleaned equipment and single service articles. Remove or protect all food from contamination before cleaning display cases or coolers. Keep the area where food-packaging and wrapping materials are stored clean.

Avoid pooling of water on low spots of the floor in food prep areas and coolers. Also, avoid collection of water beneath service and display cases from condensate or water trapped following cleaning.

Avoid water accumulation in condensate pans in service cases or coolers, which may potentially fall on open product.

Damaged, pitted, corroded or cracked equipment cannot be used and should be repaired or replaced. Do not repair equipment on site without protecting food and food contact surfaces. Avoid keeping unused equipment in food preparation areas.

Maintenance and other service providers can be a source of cross contamination so written procedures should define the areas within the food establishment where they are permitted during food preparation. Written procedures for food establishments should include the cleaning and sanitizing of maintenance tools. Maintenance tools and equipment (e.g., ladders) can become contaminated and can transfer *L. monocytogenes* from one area to another if not cleaned and sanitized appropriately. Store maintenance tools and equipment away from food, food contact equipment, utensils and food packaging materials. Repairs that are performed on food contact surfaces and equipment should be cleaned and sanitized after repair and before being reinstated/reinstalled for use.

Repair floor cracks and other floor surfaces in disrepair that can harbor bacteria.

Cleaning tools used in raw food production should never be used for cleaning in ready-to-eat food preparation areas. Consider color-coding these items to distinguish between raw and ready-to-eat and using separate color coded tools for cleaning of toilet rooms.

Take care to insure that hands or gloved hands do not contact clean surfaces and food products after touching unclean surfaces.

Prevent poor employee hygiene practices and inadequate cleaning by providing appropriate employee training. The training should include a direct observation of the employee's ability to follow the written procedure.

Time and Temperature Control

L. monocytogenes is unlike most other foodborne pathogens due to its ability to grow under refrigeration temperatures. *Listeria* can grow in temperatures ranging from 31°F to 113°F. The organism grows best between 70°F and 100°F and slows down considerably at lower temperatures such as those used in refrigeration. The Food Code requires that refrigerated foods be held at 41°F or below, but the colder the temperature of the food, the greater the impact on limiting growth of *Listeria*. It is important to get foods cold quickly and to keep them cold. If low levels of *L. monocytogenes* are accidentally present in a ready-to-eat food item that supports growth, over time the organism can multiply to higher numbers and increase the risk of illness. A system of controls should be in place to limit the cold storage time for foods that support growth of *Listeria*.

Temperature Control for Receiving

Temperature checks should be made of refrigerated deliveries. Frozen food should be

solidly frozen and refrigerated food should be 41°F or below, unless a higher temperature is permitted by law. Appropriate action should be taken in response to any high food temperature problems detected.

Calibrated temperature-monitoring devices should be used to ensure proper temperature control during shipment and storage.

Time/temperature control for safety (TCS) foods (formerly called potentially hazardous foods or PHF foods) should be placed into cold storage immediately. The goal is to ensure that food products remain at temperatures that minimize growth of pathogens such as *L. monocytogenes*.

Refrigeration and Freezer Units – Holding, Storage and Display

All refrigeration units used to store TCS foods should have adequate capacity and sufficient air circulation to maintain product temperatures of 41°F or below. Freezers should be capable of keeping foods frozen solid.

Cold holding units for storage and display should be equipped with at least one permanently affixed accurate thermometer that is located to allow for easy viewing by food employees. The temperature of the warmest part of the refrigeration unit should be monitored (see the FDA Food Code Section 4-204.112(A)). Food establishments might consider using temperature recording devices and refrigeration alarm systems to improve compliance. Cold holding units should not be loaded beyond the designated display load line, nor should vents be blocked to prevent proper airflow. Do not alter any shelving without verifying that proper airflow and temperatures are not adversely affected. Keep all refrigerated units and freezer doors closed whenever possible. Keeping the doors open may result in higher temperatures that could increase the potential for growth of *Listeria*.

Improper sanitation, maintenance, accent lighting, warm air currents within the store and loading a case with warm product may affect the ability to maintain proper product temperatures within refrigerated cases.

Time/Temperature Controls – Product Handling

During cooling or cold storage, refrigerated units should be set low enough to keep TCS foods at temperatures of 41°F or below. The 2003 FDA/FSIS Risk Assessment on *L. monocytogenes* in RTE foods demonstrated that this would have the biggest impact on preventing listeriosis.

Maintain a product rotation system based on the manufacturer‘s date code or recommended shelf life, using the product with the shortest remaining shelf life first.

The FDA Food Code recommends that ready-to-eat TCS foods prepared and held in a food establishment for more than 24 hours shall be clearly date marked. That date marking should indicate the date or day by which the food shall be consumed, sold, or

discarded when held at a temperature of 41°F or less for a maximum of 7 days (FDA Food Code Section 3-501.17). See the Food Code for which foods are exempt from date marking. Check with your state or local regulatory authority for specific requirements on date marking.

Minimize the time refrigerated foods are kept at room temperature. For temperature control during preparation, work with only small batches and limit the time that TCS foods are held at room temperature in order to minimize growth of pathogens such as *L. monocytogenes*.

FDA guidelines allow for a working supply of refrigerated TCS foods that are displayed or held for service for immediate consumption to be safely kept out of temperature control for a limited time; this is referred to as using "Time as a Public Health Control." The food must be marked with the time it was removed from temperature control and cooked, served, or discarded (FDA Food Code section 3-501.19). Check with your state or local regulatory authority for specific requirements for the use of Time as a Public Health Control.

Minimize adding to or topping off TCS ready-to-eat foods that are stored in bulk containers for display. When a topping off procedure is conducted, a system should be in place to ensure a complete break in the cycle of commingling ready-to-eat food products occurs. The timeframe should be 7 days or less from the time the first ready-to-eat food was prepared and placed on display. The temperature of the commingled ready-to-eat product should be kept at 41°F or below. For more details see the date marking provision of the Food Code (3-501.17 Ready-to-Eat Time/Temperature Control for Safe Food, Date Marking).

Every food establishment needs to have AMC of risk factors. Active managerial temperature control can be applied by incorporating a plan to monitor temperatures along every step in the process. Follow FDA Food Code guidelines for proper cold holding, thawing, cooking, hot holding and cooling recommendations. Control measures should include taking corrective actions immediately when food exceeds the required temperature.

Consumer labeling should be provided with the pack date (at the time of purchase) and information to store at temperatures below 41°F. Some retailers are providing information regarding the usable shelf life of products including 3 days for meats and 4 days for cheeses.

Retailers are in a position to proactively share food safety information with their customers because they are a credible resource and are frequently in communication with consumers. There are many resources on the topic of maintaining proper temperatures in home refrigerators and how to reduce the risk of *Listeria* contamination and these can be found in Appendix 1 of this document.

Controls Other Than Time and Temperature

Although time and temperature are the primary controls for minimizing or preventing the growth of *L. monocytogenes*, other factors such as pH and water activity can limit or prevent *Listeria* growth. It is well established that *L. monocytogenes* does not grow when the pH of the food is less than or equal to 4.4 or if the water activity of the food is less than or equal to 0.92. Foods may naturally have a pH or water activity that prevents growth of *L. monocytogenes* or may be intentionally processed to achieve these characteristics; for example, acidifying deli-type salads by the addition of vinegar or citric acid to bring the pH to less than or equal to 4.4. *Listeria* growth inhibitors can be added to food to prevent or limit *L. monocytogenes growth*; for example, some deli-meat manufacturers add inhibitors to their products. Likewise, antimicrobial substances such as sorbic acid are commonly used to prevent the growth of *L. monocytogenes* in foods such as cheeses.

Minimizing or preventing the growth of *L. monocytogenes* via pH, water activity, or the use of growth inhibitors requires knowledge of the various chemical and physical interactions that can take place in different types of food. FDA provides detailed information on how to determine if a food does not support pathogen growth based on pH and/or water activity, as indicated in reference that follows at the end of this paragraph. Some foods may fall into a category whereby a specific product assessment (PA) must be made to determine if the food can support growth. Refer to the FDA Food Code (1-2 Definitions, Time/Temperature Control for Safety Food and Annex 2, Time/Temperature Control for Safety Food) for details.

New technologies are constantly being tested and developed to further help in the effort to control *L. monocytogenes*. Among these are newly designed equipment such as cold holding cases, advanced packaging systems that incorporate antimicrobial agents and processing techniques and additives that inhibit the growth of *Listeria*.

Preventing Cross-Contamination

Since *Listeria* is present in many environments, it is extremely difficult to eliminate it completely in food establishments. Employees and incoming raw materials or products may easily reintroduce *Listeria* into the food establishment. Unclean equipment and poor sanitation can result in the transfer of *Listeria* onto ready-to-eat foods and food contact surfaces. The widespread nature of this organism means that a system-wide approach for control may be needed.

Preventing Cross Contamination of Ready-To-Eat Foods by Raw Foods

Ensuring complete separation of raw and ready-to-eat foods throughout all areas of receiving, storage, preparation, display and service is ideal for preventing contamination. Containers that held raw ingredients should not be re-used for storing other RTE ingredients without prior cleaning and sanitizing.

If space is limited where raw and ready-to-eat foods are kept in the same area, separation can be achieved by using physical space, physical dividers, different production times for raw and ready-to-eat food items with a complete cleaning and sanitizing in between, or storing raw foods below ready-to-eat foods.

Color-coding of cutting boards, handles on knives, tongs and utensils can be a useful visual reminder for keeping food contact surfaces that touch raw foods separate from those that touch ready-to-eat foods.

Preventing Contamination of Ready-To-Eat Foods From Other Sources

Food and packaging material should be protected from contamination during storage and display. Store food and food packaging material in a clean, dry location protected from overhead contamination. These items should be stored at least six inches above the floor on shelves, racks, pallets, or other means to reduce potential contamination, facilitate cleaning and aid in pest control.

Food or food packaging material should not be stored below dripping or leaking condensate.

Care should be taken when bringing items such as pallets, boxes, milk crates, shipping containers, shopping carts, etc. into ready-to-eat food preparation areas, since they may be a source of *Listeria* contamination. These items should be handled to minimize cross-contamination of food contact surfaces.

Foot traffic into food preparation areas should also be controlled, since shoes might be a source of *Listeria* contamination. Do not allow maintenance personnel, salespeople, customers, visitors, or other unauthorized individuals into areas where ready-to-eat food is being prepared unless they have followed proper preventative procedures. Maintenance personnel's clothing, tools and equipment such as ladders can also be a source of contamination. Their access into food preparation areas should be limited. Food and food packaging materials should be removed or otherwise protected during any necessary maintenance activities. Food processing equipment that may have been contaminated during any maintenance activities should be cleaned and sanitized prior to use. Whenever possible, defective equipment should not be repaired in a food preparation area.

Garnishes may also be a source of contamination. Fresh garnishes should be thoroughly washed if they contact ready-to-eat foods and replaced regularly. Plastic garnishes should be cleaned and sanitized between uses.

When it is necessary to temporarily retain product determined to be unsalable for any reason, it should be segregated in a designated area, labeled appropriately and separated from saleable food items. Unsalable products may include food items that are being returned to the distributor, food items that are out of date, or food items that are damaged or spoiled.

Remodeling

Food and food preparation areas should be protected against contamination from construction during remodels, extensive repairs and installing or removing equipment. Special attention should be made to prevent possible *Listeria* harborage sites that may get exposed or introduced during construction.

Make sure all food contact surfaces and equipment are covered and protected against contamination. Because *Listeria* may spread via the air, either perform repairs during off hours or protect food prep areas against contamination by installing a dust and vapor proof plastic barrier. Following construction and before starting any food preparation, clean and sanitize all food contact surfaces along with cleaning floors, walls, drains, sides of equipment and cabinets where harborage sites might have been exposed.

Employee Practices and Training

Employee Practices

A very important factor in limiting the risk of *L. monocytogenes* contamination is ensuring employees are trained and knowledgeable about the sources of contamination and practices that can minimize or prevent problems. Employees should be aware of the severity of listeriosis and the damaging impacts it could potentially have on the establishment and its customers.

A written employee health and personal hygiene policy should be established. Refer to the FDA Food Code (2-2 Employee Health, 2-3 Personal Cleanliness, 2-4 Hygienic Practices) for specific requirements. Employees should be trained on proper hand washing, glove usage and other practices to prevent risks related to *L. monocytogenes*.

Employees should avoid direct bare hand contact with any RTE foods. Single-service gloves or cleaned and sanitized utensils, such as tongs, spoons or ladles should be used whenever possible.

Gloves should be changed and discarded and hands washed every time the employee changes tasks or the gloves become damaged, soiled or contaminated. Gloves are never a substitute for proper hand washing.

Because employees clothing might become contaminated with *Listeria*, consideration should be given to having employees wear clean aprons or smocks (disposable is recommended) in ready-to-eat food areas. Prior to leaving food preparation areas, such as leaving for breaks, eating meals or visiting toilet facilities, employees should remove aprons and smocks. *Listeria* can enter the food establishment on employee's clothing, including shoes and then contaminate food or food contact surfaces through poor food safety practices.

Traffic flow of employees into and out of ready-to-eat food preparation areas should be limited where possible to prevent the introduction or spread of *Listeria*. When movement in and out of the ready-to-eat food area is necessary, appropriate precautions should be taken, e.g., change of outer clothing and immediate hand washing.

Employee Training

Knowledgeable food employees are vital to food safety. All food handlers need to understand risk factors associated with receiving, storing, preparing, holding, displaying and handling food as it relates to their assigned duties. Food safety training should be a part of every food establishments' AMC program. Training and supervision will provide employees with the knowledge and skills necessary to follow policies and procedures designed to control critical risk factors.

It is important for food establishment operators to design and implement a food safety training program appropriate for their operation. This *L. monocytogenes* guidance document can be used to assist in covering important intervention strategies.

Other training materials are also available and listed below. The list below is not exhaustive and does not imply endorsement by CFP.

- SafeMark
- ServSafe
- FDA's Managing Food Safety: A Guide For The Voluntary Use of HACCP Principles for Operators of Food Service and Retail Food Establishments
- FDA Oral Culture Learner Project – Educational Videos for Retail Food Employees
- Association of Food and Drug Officials Retail Meat and Poultry Processing Guidelines
- Penn State Universities Control of Listeria monocytogenes in Retail Establishments

Training should be a continual process to ensure compliance with company policies and the most current food safety practices. The training should cover basic information on *L. monocytogenes* interventions, including employee health and hygiene, proper cleaning and sanitizing, frequency of cleaning, protection against contamination and temperature control.

Verifying the Effectiveness of Sanitation Programs

Every food establishment should have a cleaning and sanitation program and should have a method for verifying its effectiveness. There are different ways to verify the effectiveness of sanitation programs and often a combination of approaches can be used.

It is important to understand the difference between validation and verification. In addition, monitoring is another step in assuring effective food safety programs. Each of these terms – validation, verification and monitoring – have different meanings.

Validation

Validation is the assurance or proof that the elements of the food safety plan, including standard operating procedures (SOPs), are effective and capable of controlling identified hazards. Validation steps may include, but are not limited to, the application of regulations, policies, guidance documents, scientifically proven processes, technical information, expert advice and recognized best practices. Retail food establishments will most likely use only those procedures, steps or practices that are already validated when developing SOPs or other food safety plans. That validation might occur at the corporate level in the case of a chain, or by chemical suppliers, universities or trade associations in the case of independently operated facilities. Therefore, it is unlikely a given retail food establishment will need to validate its food safety practices itself. However, if an operator decides to request a variance (FDA Food Code Section 8-103.10) and a HACCP Plan is required (FDA Food Code Section 8-201.14) the operator may be required to submit validation information.

Verification

Verification is the ongoing process of applying the observations, methods, procedures, tests and other evaluations to determine if monitoring tasks as described below have been performed correctly. Verification can be accomplished using onsite verification, record verification, or both.

- Onsite Verification – Examples include observations to ensure tasks are completed as described in a written program or checking the use of chemicals to verify proper concentrations and applications.
- Record Verification – When records are required or kept in accordance with a company's food safety plan, then a review of those records for completeness should be made to ensure records have been filled out correctly. Examples include internal audit reports, temperature recording devices, sanitation checklists or corrective action reports.

Different methods can be used to verify the effectiveness of sanitation programs. Sanitation programs should be verified using observation and monitoring. Visual inspections, observations, tracking chemical use, monitoring records and reviewing cleaning charts are simple, inexpensive and effective methods to verify compliance with cleaning procedures. Store management, internal food safety auditors, chemical suppliers, regulatory inspections or third party auditors can be used to conduct the verification.

Monitoring

Monitoring is an ongoing process of checking a specific limit or practice (temperature, cleaning, etc.) to ensure the standard is met and that results are properly recorded as

per the SOP or food safety plan. Monitoring is the act of:

- Conducting a planned sequence of observations or measurements
- Assessing if the step is under control and
- Recording the results of the check when required.

When monitoring a task, the steps outlined in the written program should be followed as written and all regulatory requirements must be met. Observing monitoring procedures and reviewing the findings are part of the verification process.

Supplemental verification methods

Additional verification methods are available to supplement observation and monitoring. These include: rapid sanitation tests and microbiological testing.

These two methods vary by cost and level of technical expertise needed to use them, and therefore may not be suitable depending upon the size and type of the facility. A customized approach based on the specific risks or technical expertise available in an operation is recommended. The following is a brief description of these two methods.

Rapid Sanitation Tests

To be of most benefit, these tests need to be done on a regular basis. A food establishment should be willing to make a commitment to using this method. The results of these tests can be used for tracking trends and establishing or monitoring the sanitation program.

Adenosine triphosphate (ATP) bioluminescence and glucose tests are examples of rapid test kits. These kits usually include a swab that is rubbed on a surface and a hand-held measuring device. These kits measure chemical components such as ATP or glucose that reflect the amount of organic matter, food debris, sugars, microorganisms, etc., on a surface and provide a general indication of cleanliness. They do not measure bacterial counts or provide information on types of organisms that may be present.

Microbiological Testing

Before undertaking microbial testing, a food establishment should evaluate several important factors. Most important is to have a clear understanding of regulatory requirements around testing. For example, would testing require a “test and hold” situation as would occur in a food manufacturing facility? Other important factors should be considered such as:

- What will be sampled?
- What organisms will be considered for sample evaluation?
- When and where will the samples be collected?
- Where will the samples be analyzed?

- What criteria suggest a potential problem?

A food establishment operator also needs to have a plan to specifically address what action will be taken to remedy the situation when results indicate a potential concern. There are many variables to be considered when designing a microbiological sampling program. If an establishment is interested in considering a microbial sampling program, it is recommended it seek specific guidance and expertise regarding microbiological sampling and its use to verify sanitation.

Additional resources to assist with this process can be found in Appendix 1 of this document.

Supplier Specifications

The following recommendations are meant to help food establishments identify and approve potential suppliers. It is understood that not all items listed will be found to be critical for all food establishments. It is also understood that some suppliers will treat specific information as proprietary and confidential. Nonetheless, the supplier should provide some evidence that the requested programs are in place.

1. Only buy from an approved source. All food suppliers, including producers, manufacturers and distributors, should provide proof that they have a proactive food safety and food security program in place. While the FDA Food Code does not define ‘approved source’, it does define ‘approved’ to mean acceptable to the regulatory authority based on a determination of conformity with principles, practices and generally recognized standards that protect public health.

2. Develop a relationship with all suppliers and understand their processes and cold chain distribution.

3. All suppliers should be audited at least annually by a federal, state or local regulatory authority or a third party. You may ask your supplier if they are certified against a Global Food Safety Initiative (GFSI) or other recognized scheme.

4. Does the supplier's food safety plan include internationally recognized HACCP and sanitation standards? How is the plan validated and verified? Is an environmental monitoring and product-monitoring program in place? Do these programs include test-and-hold provisions?

5. Food suppliers’ buildings, facilities, grounds and equipment should be constructed and maintained in a manner consistent with regulatory requirements to prevent the contamination of food or food packaging materials.

6. Letters of Guarantee should be obtained from every supplier for each product supplied to insure that all food safety requirements are being met. Ask your supplier about their sanitation practices, cold chain management, or performance against

international and regulatory practices.

7. Additional information should be obtained from the supplier regarding ingredients, preservatives and microbial growth inhibitors that impact listeriosis risk in select foods. It is important for the establishment operator to understand the benefits and limitations to the use of these compounds.

8. The suppliers' facility should have a documented inspection process that occurs after sanitation that monitors and tracks cleaning effectiveness.

9. The supplier should have written cleaning procedures for the equipment and infrastructure within the establishment with the defined frequency for routine and deep cleaning based on risk.

10. The supplier should map different areas in the facility using a risk-based approach.

11. The supplier should review the sanitary design of any incoming equipment. Special care should be taken when using second–hand or refurbished equipment.

12. The supplier should have a risk management plan in place to address contractor activity including any planned construction projects.

Recalls

As this document is focused on procedures and practices used to minimize contamination and growth of *L. monocytogenes* within food establishments, a detailed discussion of food recalls for *L. monocytogenes* is out of scope. Properly managed recalls are an important part of controlling the risk of listeriosis; however, a number of good resources are available for food establishments including guidance from FDA, USDA-FSIS and the AFDO Food Recall Manual developed by the University of Florida.

Appendix 1. Resources for expert guidance regarding *L. monocytogenes*. The list below is not exhaustive and does not imply endorsement by CFP.

Entity type	Examples
Federal agency	Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), cdc.gov Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), epa.gov Food and Drug Administration (FDA), fda.gov United States Department of Agriculture, Food Safety Inspection Service (USDA/FSIS), fsis.usda.gov
State and local governments	See dslo.afdo.org for a directory
Trade, professional and non-governmental organizations and associations	Association of Food and Drug Officials (AFDO), afdo.org American Society for Microbiology (ASM), asm.org Fight Bac!, fightbac.org Food Marketing Institute (FMI), fmi.org International Association for Food Protection (IAFP), foodprotection.org International Commission on the Microbiological Specifications of Foods (ICMSF), icmsf.org National Environmental Health Association (NEHA), neha.org National Restaurant Association (NRA), restaurant.org
	National Registry of Food Safety Professionals (NRFSP), www.nrfsp.com
Academic institutions	Many universities and local or county extension programs can provide *L. monocytogenes* food safety expertise

Commercial entities	A variety of commercial entities can also provide specific recommendations regarding *L. monocytogenes*. Commercial testing labs, cleaning and sanitation chemical and service providers and a variety of private consultants can all provide assistance.

Voluntary Guidelines of

Sanitation Practices

Standard Operating Procedures

and Good Retail Practices

To Minimize Contamination and

Growth of Listeria monocytogenes

Within Food Establishments

Developed by the 2004 - 2006

Conference for Food Protection

Listeria monocytogenes Intervention Committee

Contents

Acknowledgements	iii
Introduction	1
Targeted Sanitation Procedures	2
Time and Temperature Control	6
Contamination	8
Employee Training	10
Verifying the Effectiveness of Sanitation Programs	11
Product Specifications and Recalls	13

Acknowledgements

Cas Tryba, Co-Chair
Big Y Foods, Inc.

Frank Greene, Co-Chair
CT Department of consumer Protection

Jill Hollingsworth
Food Marketing Institute

Jenny Scott
Food Products Association

Joseph Corby
NY Department of Agriculture and Markets

Richard H. Linton
Purdue University

Deborah Marlow
Field Operations and Enforcement, Retail Foods Division Texas Department of Health

Wayne Derstine
FL Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services

Karen Reid
West Hartford-Bloomfield Health District

Mike Magner
Sheetz, Inc.

Kenneth Rosenwinkel
Jewel-Osco (Albertson's)

Thomas M. Foegle
Brinker International

Roger Coffman
Lake County Health Department

William E. McCullough
Arby's Inc.

Pam Williams
Yum!Brands, Inc.

Sheri Dove
PA Department of Agriculture

Jan McCabe/Todd Rossow
Publix Super Markets, Inc.

Thomas L. Schwarz
International Inflight Food Service Association

Thomas P. Ford
Ecolab

Jon Woody (FDA Lead)
Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition
U.S. Food and Drug Administration

Paul Uhler, TAS, Office of Policy, Program and Employee Development FSIS

Shirley Bohm
Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition
U.S. Food and Drug Administration

Heather Hicks Quesenberry (USDA lead)
USDA-FSIS

Introduction

Listeria monocytogenes (*Lm*) is a bacterium that can cause listeriosis, a serious disease that is primarily transmitted through foods. It is a ubiquitous microorganism that can be introduced into foods at multiple points in the food chain. Despite the wide occurrence of *Lm* in homes (people, pets and the environment), in foods, in food manufacturing facilities, and in food establishments, the incidence of listeriosis in the U.S. is low (less than 1,000 cases per year), but the mortality rate is estimated to be 20 % or higher. Extensive controls in the manufacturing of ready-to-eat foods have been responsible, in part, for reducing contamination of foods and a decreasing incidence of listeriosis.

Food establishments are very different from processing plants. They are open to the public, with customers, salesmen, employees and deliveries coming into the food establishment throughout the day. These situations increase the opportunity for *Lm* to be introduced. Therefore, it is very important that food establishment operators utilize active managerial control to implement appropriate procedures that minimize the potential for *Lm* contamination of ready-to-eat foods within their facilities.

Vigilant active managerial control is a key part in reducing the risk of listeriosis. Active managerial control means the purposeful incorporation of specific actions or procedures by industry management into the operation of their business to attain control over foodborne illness risk factors. It embodies a preventive rather than reactive approach to food safety through a continuous system of monitoring and verification. Every food establishment needs to have active managerial control of risk factors associated with foodborne illness. This may be achieved through training programs, manager oversight, and standard operating procedures. For example, some establishments incorporate control measures into individual recipes, production schedules, or employee job descriptions.

The FDA/FSIS *L. monocytogenes* Risk Assessment categorized the relative risk of ready-to-eat foods with respect to foodborne listeriosis. Ready-to-eat foods were placed into categories ranging from very high to very low risk. Food establishment operators can use these categories to identify specific foods, and related areas and equipment within their facilities that should be the focus for *Listeria* control measures.

The *L. monocytogenes* Risk Assessment identified very high and high risk foods to include: deli meats, unheated frankfurters, soft unripened cheeses, high fat and other dairy products, pasteurized fluid milk, pâté, meat spreads, unpasteurized fluid milk, and smoked seafood. It is important to note that the risk assessment did not address all ready-to-eat foods, and any food that supports the growth of *Lm* at refrigerated temperatures may also have the potential to cause listeriosis.

Risk factors may be managed without the use of formal record keeping; however, some food establishments may want to develop written records to ensure that monitoring is being performed using the correct method and at the proper frequency, and corrective actions are taken immediately. To minimize the risk of listeriosis, food establishment operators should keep refrigerated foods as cold as possible and limit their storage time; take steps to prevent contamination during in-store handling and storage, and target sanitation procedures to those areas most likely to be sources of *Lm*. Specific information on controlling *Lm* in food establishments, with emphasis on these areas, is provided in this document.

Targeted Sanitation Procedures

Listeria monocytogenes (*Lm*) is found almost everywhere and can be present in most environments, including the soil, plants, humans, equipment, animals, foods, drains, and supplies. The categories listed below identify areas that could likely harbor *Lm* within a retail food establishment. The items listed in the "areas of concern" category would generally have a higher probability of *Lm* contamination than the items listed in the "additional areas that could require special attention" category. The items listed below are not exclusive and every operator should do an evaluation to identify specific areas and priorities within their own operation.

<u>Areas of Concern</u>
Food Contact Areas:

- Slicers
- Cutting boards
- Knives, knife racks, tubs, bowls, platters and utensils
- Food containers and trays in display cases and refrigerators
- Food contact surfaces inside display cases

Non- Food Contact Surfaces:

- Floors, drains, in preparation areas
- The interior of display cases and walk in coolers, specifically condensate, drip pans, drains and door tracks
- Cleaning tools for food contact surfaces, such as brushes and cleaning cloths
- Cleaning tools such as mops and buckets
- Wet floors, standing water

<u>Additional Areas That Could Require Special Attention</u>

- Door handles and handles of equipment
- Pallets, pallet jacks
- Push carts, especially the wheels
- Exterior of equipment or unused equipment

- Maintenance tools
- Non- disposable gloves, such as cleaning or safety gloves
- Walls and ceiling
- Hollow table and/or equipment legs/supports
- Seams and seals around cooler, freezer and refrigerator doors
- Trash containers
- Air filters, blowers, vents and fans
- Motor housings on food processing equipment
- Unsealed joints in food preparation areas, such as riveted information tags or plates on equipment
- Scales
- Food wrapping machines
- Hand contact surfaces, such as on-off switches, knobs, handles, phones, and intercoms.
- Hoses and nozzles
- Ice machines and the drain areas under and behind ice machines

Maintenance Concerns

- Defective walls and ceilings, overhead pipes
- Worn or cracked rubber seals around doors
- Cracked hoses
- Defective and unused equipment
- Bringing in used equipment from another location to replace broken equipment

Cleaning and Sanitizing Practices

The primary focus should be on sources most likely to cause contamination in high-risk food preparation areas. Refer to the list above, identified in the food contact and non- food contact sections.

All equipment should be easily cleanable and free of defects. Equipment should comply with the specifications listed in the FDA *and* CFP Food Establishment Plan Review Guide (http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/~dms/prev-toc.html). Remove any defective or unused equipment from food preparation areas.

Sanitation programs to specifically address *Lm* consists of three actions:

1. Effective removal of soil
2. An effective rinse step
3. Proper application of a sanitizing agent, which includes contact time, concentration and temperature.

Cleaning effectiveness depends upon the formulation and how the product is used and various other issues specific to the cleaning being attempted, such as type of soil, water hardness, tools used, and even the training on the proper procedure and the execution of the procedure by the person doing the cleaning.

A food establishment should implement written procedures for proper cleaning and sanitizing food contact and non- food contact surfaces. These procedures should include the frequency of cleaning, chemicals to use, instruction on how to perform the task, and the steps to verify it is being done correctly. A visual examination should be done of all food contact surfaces before the start of operations to ensure appropriate compliance with cleaning procedures and to take corrective action if necessary.

Written procedures for food establishments should include the cleaning and sanitizing of maintenance tools. Maintenance tools and ladders can easily get contaminated and can transfer *Lm* from one area to another if not cleaned and sanitized appropriately. Store maintenance tools and ladders away from food, food contact equipment, utensils, and food packaging material.

The cleaning and sanitizing procedures should also include floor drains in food preparation areas. Remove the drain cover and basket; remove all debris and discard into the trash container. Use a drain brush to scrub and remove organic material from the drain hole. Use quaternary ammonium compounds to sanitize the floor and drain area. Consider using bactericidal drain rings where ready-to-eat food is prepared and stored. Enzymatic cleaners can also be effective in removing organic material, prior to sanitation.

Only a dry cleanup should be done during food production. Splash from a wet cleanup can easily contaminate a cleaned surface. Splash can aerosolize and spread contamination throughout the entire area. Avoid mid-shift wet cleanup because it can produce aerosols and add water in the food preparation area.

Use only low pressure or foaming hoses rather than high-pressure sprays. Do not use low-pressure hoses for cleaning during food preparation or when there is any exposed food, equipment, utensils or food packaging. Low-pressure foaming guns and sanitizer rinse guns may be used only after removal or protection of all foods, previously cleaned equipment, and single service articles. Remove or protect all food from contamination before cleaning display cases or coolers. Keep the area where food- packaging and wrapping material is stored clean.

Clean as you go; remove food spills quickly. Bacteria like cool damp areas, so limiting standing water helps control *Lm* and most other bacteria. Bacteria from wet areas can easily be transferred to employee shoes, carts or other equipment if not wiped up quickly.

<u>Sanitizers</u>

All cleaners and sanitizers used in a food establishment must have at least the following information: product description, instructions on how to use the product, properties, yield or effective concentration, and safety information.

Sanitizing agents shall be used in accordance with EPA-approved manufacturer's label use instructions. Effective sanitization can be achieved only when preceded by thorough cleaning and rinsing steps.

Cleaning Frequencies

A master-cleaning schedule should be developed for each facility to include all food and non-food contact surfaces. Follow equipment manufacturer's instructions to assure complete disassembly and thorough cleaning of all equipment parts. Cleaning and sanitizing frequencies are listed in the FDA Food Code.

Additional Important Information

Minimize splash from hoses into floor drains. Plugged drains must be repaired immediately. Do not place equipment over floor drains. This practice would make it difficult to clean the floor drain and could result in equipment contamination during cleaning or drain backups.

Avoid pooling of water on low spots of floor in food prep areas and walk-in coolers. Also, avoid collection of water beneath service and display cases from condensate or water trapped under cases following case or floor cleaning.

Avoid water accumulation in condensate pans in service cases or coolers, which may potentially fall on open product.

Never clean display cases or coolers until all food is removed or protected from contamination.

Damaged, pitted, corroded or cracked equipment cannot be used and must be repaired or replaced. Do not repair equipment on site without protecting food and food contact surfaces. Avoid keeping unused equipment in food preparation areas.

Avoid floor cracks and other floor surfaces in disrepair that can harbor bacteria.

Never use cleaning tools used in raw food production for cleaning in ready-to-eat food preparation areas. Consider color- coding these items.

Direct hand contact with previously cleaned surfaces and food products after touching unclean surfaces is prohibited.

Prevent poor employee practices and inadequate cleaning by providing appropriate employee training.

Time and Temperature Control

Lm is unlike most other foodborne pathogens due to its ability to grow under refrigeration temperatures. *Lm* can grow in temperatures ranging from 31° F to 113°F. The organism grows best between 70° F and 100° F and slows down considerably at lower temperature such as those used in refrigeration. Although the Food Code requires that refrigerated foods be held at 41°F or below, the colder the temperature of the food, the greater the impact on limiting growth of *Lm*. It is important to get foods cold quickly and to keep them cold. If low levels of *Lm* are accidentally present in a ready-to-eat food item that supports growth, over time the organism can multiply to higher numbers and pose a significant risk of illness. A system of controls should be in place to limit the cold storage time for foods that support growth of *Lm*.

Temperature Control for Receiving

Temperature checks should be made of refrigerated deliveries. Frozen food should be solidly frozen and refrigerated food should be 41° F or below, unless a higher temperature is permitted by law. Report any high temperature problems to management immediately.

Consider using temperature -monitoring devices or time-temperature indicators (TTI) to ensure proper temperature control during shipment and storage.

Minimize the time that delivered food remains un-refrigerated. Potentially hazardous foods (time/temperature control for safety food) should be placed into cold storage immediately. The goal is to ensure that food products remain at temperatures that minimize growth of pathogens such as *Lm.*

Refrigeration and Freezer Units

All refrigeration units should have adequate capacity and sufficient air circulation to maintain product temperatures of 41° F or below. Freezers should be capable of keeping foods frozen solid.

Cold holding units for storage and display must be equipped with at least one permanently affixed accurate thermometer that is located to allow for easy viewing by food employees. The temperature of the warmest part of the refrigeration unit should be monitored. (See the FDA Food Code Section 4-204.112) Larger food establishments might consider using temperature recording devices and refrigeration alarm systems.

Cold holding units should not be loaded beyond the designated display load line, nor should vents be blocked to prevent proper air- flow in the cold holding units. Do not alter any shelving without verifying that proper air- flow and temperatures are not adversely affected.

Keep all refrigerated units and freezer doors closed whenever possible. Keeping the doors open may result in higher temperatures that could increase the potential for growth of *Lm*.

Improper sanitation/maintenance, accent lighting, warm air currents within the store and loading the case with warm product may affect the ability to maintain proper product temperatures within refrigerated cases.

Time/Temperature Controls

During cold storage, refrigerated units must be set low enough to keep foods that require time temperature control for safety (TCS) at temperatures of 41° F or below. The FDA/FSIS Risk Assessment on *Lm* in RTE foods demonstrated that this would have the biggest impact on preventing listeriosis.

Maintain a product rotation system based on the manufacturer's date code or recommended shelf life, using the product with the shortest remaining shelf life first.

FDA guidelines recommend that certain ready to eat potentially hazardous foods (time/temperature control for safety), be date marked with a storage time of 7 days or less once opened or prepared in a food establishment and is stored at 41° F or below for more than 24 hours. (See the FDA Food Code Section 3-501.17) **Check with your state or local regulatory authority for specific requirements on Date Marking.**

Minimize the time refrigerated foods are kept at room temperature. For temperature control during preparation, work with only small batches, and limit the time that potentially hazardous foods (time/temperature control for safety) are held at room temperature in order to minimize growth of pathogens such as *Lm*.

FDA guidelines allow for a working supply of refrigerated potentially hazardous foods (time/temperature control for safety) that are displayed or held for service for immediate consumption to be safely kept out of temperature control for a limited time. The food must be marked with the time it was removed from temperature control and cooked and served, served, or discarded within six (6) hours. The food must have an initial temperature of 41° F or less when removed from temperature control and may not exceed 70° F. Written procedures must be maintained in the food establishment. (See the FDA Food Code Section 3-501.19) **Check with your state or local regulatory authority for specific requirements for the use of Time as a Public Health Control.**

Every food establishment needs to have active managerial control of risk factors. Active managerial temperature control can be applied by incorporating a plan to monitor temperatures along every step in the process. Follow FDA Food Code guidelines for proper cold holding, thawing, cooking, hot holding and cooling

requirements. Control measures must include taking corrective action immediately when food exceeds the required temperature.

Contamination

Since *Lm* is present in many environments, it is extremely difficult to eliminate it completely in food establishments. Employees and incoming raw materials or products may easily reintroduce *Lm* into the food establishment.
Unclean equipment and poor sanitation can result in the transfer of *Lm* onto ready-to-eat foods. The widespread nature of this organism mandates a systematic approach for control.

Preventing Cross Contamination of Ready-To-Eat Foods by Raw Foods
Ensuring complete separation of raw and ready-to-eat foods throughout all areas of receiving, storage, preparation, display, and service is ideal for preventing contamination.

If space is limited where raw and ready-to-eat foods are kept in the same area, separation can be achieved by using sufficient physical space, physical dividers, different production times for raw and ready-to-eat food items with a complete cleaning and sanitizing in between, or storing raw foods below ready-to-eat foods.

Color-coding of cutting boards, handles on knives, tongs and utensils can be a useful visual reminder for keeping food contact surfaces that touch raw foods separate from those that touch ready-to-eat foods.

Preventing Contamination of Ready-To-Eat Foods From Other Sources
Food and packaging material must be protected from contamination during storage and display. Store food and food packaging material in a clean, dry location protected from overhead contamination. These items must be stored at least six inches above the floor on shelves, racks, pallets, or other means to avoid moisture absorption and to facilitate cleaning and pest control.

Food or food packaging material should not be stored below dripping or leaking condensate.

Pallets, boxes, shipping containers or other items from outside the food establishment should not be brought directly into ready-to-eat food preparation areas, since they may be a source of *Lm* contamination.

Foot traffic into food preparation areas should also be controlled, since shoes might be a source of *Lm* contamination. Do not allow maintenance personnel, sales people, customers, visitors, or other unauthorized individuals into areas where ready-to-eat food is being prepared unless they have followed proper preventative procedures.

Maintenance personnel's clothing, tools and equipment such as ladders can also be a source of contamination. So their access into food preparation areas must be limited. Food and food packaging materials must be removed or otherwise protected during any necessary maintenance activities. Food processing equipment that may have been contaminated during any maintenance activities must be cleaned and sanitized prior to use. Whenever possible, defective equipment should not be repaired in a food preparation area.

Garnishes may also be a source of contamination. To reduce this risk, fresh garnishes should be thoroughly washed if they come in contact with ready-to-eat foods and replaced regularly. Plastic garnishes should be cleaned and sanitized between uses.

Minimize adding to or topping off ready-to-eat foods while on display. If this is not possible, a system should be in place to ensure a complete break in the cycle of commingling ready-to-eat food products. The timeframe should be seven (7) days or less from the time the first ready-to-eat food was prepared and placed on display. The temperature of the commingled ready-to-eat product must be kept at 41°F or below.

As noted previously, wet cleaning and sanitizing should only take place after all exposed food and packaging products have been removed from the area or covered to protect them from splash contamination.

When it is necessary to temporarily retain product determined to be unsaleable for any reason, it should be segregated in a designated area (morgue) separate from saleable food items. Unsaleable products may include food items that are being returned to the distributor, food items that are out of code, or food items that are damaged or spoiled.

Employee Practices to Prevent Lm Contamination

Lm can enter the food establishment on employee's clothing, including shoes, and contaminate food through poor food safety practices. A very important factor in limiting the risk of *Lm* contamination is ensuring employees are trained and knowledgeable about the sources of contamination and practices that can minimize or prevent problems. Employees should be aware of the severity of listeriosis and the damaging impacts it could potential have on the establishment and its customers.

A written employee health and personal hygiene policy should be established. Refer to the FDA Food Code (2-2 to 2-4) for specific requirements. Employees must be trained on proper hand washing, glove usage and other practices to prevent risks related to *Lm*.

An adequate number of hand washing sinks, including a supply of soap and paper towels, must be available and conveniently accessible to all employees in

food preparation areas and restrooms. If used, nailbrushes should be cleaned and sanitized regularly.

Employees should avoid direct bare hand contact with any RTE foods. Single-service gloves or cleaned and sanitized utensils, such as tongs, spoons or ladles should be used whenever possible.

Gloves should be changed and discarded and hands washed every time the employee changes tasks or the gloves become soiled or contaminated. Gloves are never a substitute for proper hand washing.

Because employees clothing might get contaminated with *Lm*, consideration should be given to having employees wear aprons or smocks in ready-to-eat areas. Prior to leaving food preparation areas, such as leaving for breaks, eating meals or visiting toilet facilities, employees should remove aprons and smocks.

Traffic flow of employees into and out of ready-to-eat food preparation areas should be limited where possible to prevent the introduction or spread of *Lm*. When movement in and out of the ready-to-eat food area is necessary, appropriate precautions must be taken, e.g., change of outer clothing and immediate hand washing.

Employee Training

Knowledgeable food employees are vital to a successful food operation. All food handlers need to understand risk factors associated with receiving, storing, preparing, holding, displaying and handling food in their food establishment. Food safety training should be a part of every food establishments' active managerial control program. Training and supervision will provide employees with the knowledge and skills necessary to follow policies and procedures designed to control critical risk factors.

It is important for food establishment operators to design and implement a food safety training program appropriate for their operation. This L*m* guidance document can be used to assist in covering important intervention strategies.

Other training materials are also available such as;
Super Safe Mark http://www.fmi.org/supersafemark/program.htm,
Serv Safe http://www.nraef.org/servsafe/,
Cornell University Control of Listeria in Ready to Eat Seafood
http://www.foodscience.cornell.edu/wiedmann/TrainingIndex.htm,
Managing Food Safety: A Guide For The Voluntary Use of HACCP Principles for Operators of Food Service and Retail Food Establishments
http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/~dms/hret2toc.html,
FDA 2005 Food Code http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/~dms/fc05-toc.html

Guidance for Processing Smoked Seafood at Retail (AFDO) http://www.afdo.org/afdo/upload/SmokedSeafood.pdf, Meat & Poultry Processing at Retail (AFDO) http://www.afdo.org/afdo/training/upload/Complete%20Meat%20and%20Poultry%20Manual.pdf , and Control of Listeria *monocytogenes* in Retail Establishments (Pennsylvania State University, video) http://www.foodsafety.psu.edu/retail_listeria.html

Training should be a continual process to ensure compliance with company policies and the most current food safety practices. The training should cover at least basic information on L*m* interventions, which include employee health and hygiene, proper cleaning and sanitizing, frequency of cleaning, protection against contamination, and temperature control.

Verifying the Effectiveness of Sanitation Programs

Cleaning and sanitizing are very effective means for controlling *Lm* in a food establishment. If surfaces or equipment become contaminated with *Lm*, they can transfer the organism to ready-to-eat food products. *Lm* can also be found throughout the environment in nooks and crannies, called niches, where it is more difficult to clean.

Every food establishment must have a cleaning and sanitation program and should have a method for verifying its effectiveness. There are different ways to verify the effectiveness of sanitation programs and often a combination of approaches can be used. When determining which method to use, consideration should be given to factors such as:

- How difficult the area is to clean
- Whether possible *Lm* harborage sites are present
- Whether there have been previous problems with sanitation

The person-in-charge should be responsible for ensuring that employees are properly trained for the tasks assigned to them and that they fully understand how to perform the sanitation procedures. This includes mixing and testing cleaning and sanitation solutions for proper strength, cleaning and sanitizing certain equipment according to a prescribed schedule, and checking to be sure equipment and surfaces are cleaned as needed throughout the day.

Different methods can be used to verify the effectiveness of sanitation programs, for example:

- Observation and monitoring
- Rapid sanitation tests
- Microbiological testing

These methods vary by cost and level of technical expertise needed to use them. The following is a brief description of these three methods.

Observation and Monitoring

Visual inspections, observations, tracking chemical use, monitoring records and reviewing cleaning charts are simple, inexpensive and effective methods to verify compliance with cleaning procedures. Store management, internal food safety auditors, chemical suppliers, or third party audits can be used to conduct the visual observations.

Rapid Sanitation Tests

Rapid tests will give food establishments immediate results. To be of most benefit, these tests need to be done on a regular basis over time, so a food establishment should be willing to make a commitment to using this method. The results of these tests can be used for tracking trends and monitoring compliance with the sanitation program.

ATP bioluminescence and glucose tests are examples of rapid test kits. These are usually simple kits, which include a swab that is rubbed on a surface and a hand-held measuring device. These kits measure chemical components such as ATP or glucose that reflect the amount of organic matter food debris, sugars, microorganisms, etc., on a surface and provide a general indication of cleanliness.

Microbiological Testing

Before undertaking microbial testing, a food establishment should evaluate several important factors such as:

- What will be sampled
- For what organisms will be the samples be examined
- When and where samples will be collected
- Where the samples will be analyzed and what criteria suggest a potential problem

A food establishment operator also needs to have a plan to address specifically what action will be taken to remedy the situation when results indicate a potential concern.

Total plate counts (TPC) and aerobic plate counts (APC) are more expensive than rapid testing and require using an internal or contract laboratory. TPC and APC can be used to assess the general level of bacteria on cleaned and sanitized surfaces. It is important to note that results from generic tests such as TPC or APC are not an indicator of the presence or absence of pathogens, including *Lm*. They can however provide useful information on the effectiveness of sanitation programs.

Testing the environment for *Listeria* species is more specific and can be useful if *Listeria* is suspected or known to be a problem. *Listeria* testing may be used as part of a foodborne illness investigation or as follow-up to a recall. It should be noted that *Listeria* species, and even *Lm,* can sometimes be found at retail

because *Listeria* is a common environmental contaminant. When detected, the goal is to remove the organism by rigorous cleaning and sanitation.

Sampling Protocol

Before microbiological sampling of the environment and food contact surfaces is undertaken, a food establishment should have a written protocol in place. One of the most important factors to consider in a microbial testing protocol for *Listeria* is how a food establishment will handle a positive result. The time delay between sample collection and receiving the test result may mean that the source of the pathogen, and any potentially contaminated product, are already gone.

Additional information regarding verification of sanitation can be obtained from local regulatory authorities, sanitation vendors, private laboratories, or consultants who specialize in food safety and sanitation.

Product Specifications and Recalls

Food establishments should develop product specifications with their suppliers that include, where appropriate, the following:

- Environmental testing
- Ingredient testing
- Finished product testing
- Use of ingredients known to inhibit *Lm* growth

Suppliers should have a system to hold products that are being tested. Guidance for holding tested products can be found at http://haccpalliance.org/alliance/HoldingTestedProdSept1905.pdf .

In addition, supplier auditing should be considered to verify that the controls that have been specified are being followed. The audits can be done using in-house personnel or third party auditing firms.

In the event that a product a food establishment makes or distributes was contaminated by *Lm,* the food establishment should have a recall plan in place. This plan needs to address both of the following scenarios:

- Product received from a supplier
- Product produced by the food establishment

The plan should:

- Describe how to identify the specific product(s) involved
- Identify how the distribution of the product is determined
- Specify how customers are to be notified
- Contain a draft letter/press release

The letter should contain language about *Lm* that is acceptable to the regulatory agencies. Sample letters are available at http://www.fda.gov/ora/compliance_ref/recalls/recallpg.html

When conducting a recall:

- Clearly identify the product(s). Include pictures of the packaging and coding if available.
- Segregate recalled product from previous or subsequent "safe" food. Refer to the FDA Food Code section 6-404.11 (http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/~dms/fc01-6.html#6-4)
- Give specific directions to customers on how to handle the recalled product: for example, destroy, return, or hold and segregate for pick-up.

For further information about recalls of FDA regulated foods see http://www.fda.gov/ora/compliance_ref/recalls/ggp_recall.htm.

Additionally, Subpart C of Part 7 of FDA regulations (21 CFR 7.40-59) provides general guidance for the voluntary recall of products, including those recalls initiated by a firm on its own and at FDA's request.

For USDA FSIS-regulated products refer to Directive 8080.1, revision 4. http://www.fsis.usda.gov/OPPDE/rdad/FSISDirectives/8080.1_Rev4.pdf.

Another resource is the AFDO Food Recall Manual developed by the University of Florida. http://www.afdo.org/afdo/upload/FoodRecallManual11-09-2004.pdf.

Conference for Food Protection – Committee FINAL Report

Template approved: 08/2013

Committee Final Reports are considered DRAFT until deliberated and acknowledged by the assigned Council at the Biennial Meeting

COMMITTEE NAME: 2014–2016 Hand Hygiene Committee (HHC)

COUNCIL or EXECUTIVE BOARD ASSIGNMENT: Council III

DATE OF REPORT: December 10, 2015

SUBMITTED BY: Lori LeMaster and Christina Bongo-Box, Co-Chairs

COMMITTEE CHARGE(s):

Issue: 2014 III-011
The committee is charged to:

1. Recreate the Hand Hygiene Committee, working in collaboration with FDA, CDC, and FSIS, to be charged with the following:

    a. Ascertain if additional definitions are necessary to clarify the hand hygiene procedures listed in the Food Code.

    b. Use current research including the documents created by the Committee's 2012- 2014 work (Hand Contamination Event HazardChart; Questions to Consider when Evaluating Studies of Alternative Handwashing Approaches; and Scientific, Regulatory and Behavioral Consideration of Hand Hygiene Regimes) to determine if alternatives to hand hygiene procedures equivalent to those described in the Food Code are available.

    c. Identify situations where procedures exist to prevent hand soil and contamination.

    d. Review available research on the efficacy and public health significance of antibacterial soaps, and their impact on hand hygiene procedures in the food industry.

2. Report back the Committee's findings, outcomes, and recommendations to the 2016 Biennial Meeting of the Conference for Food Protection.

COMMITTEE ACTIVITIES AND RECOMMENDATIONS:

1. Progress on Overall Committee Activities:

    a. During the first call of the HHC, the committee discussed the options for how to approach work on the assigned charges; specifically whether to work in subgroups or consider each charge together as the whole committee. The committee agreed that in order to obtain consensus on the charges, the work would be done by the entire HHC, rather than by sub-committees.

    The committee agreed on a biweekly call schedule and calls were held on 9/25/14, 10/9/14, 10/23/14, 12/4/14, 1/29/15, 2/5/15, 2/12/15, 2/26/15,3/26/15,4/9/15, 5/21/15, 6/18/15, 7/16/15,

7/30/15, 8/13/15, 8/27/15, 9/10/15, 10/8/15, and 10/22/15. Calls were recorded through Pragmatic and call recordings and call notes/minutes were shared with the group.

As a part of the March, 2015 HHC Progress Report, the HHC requested that the Executive Board provide clarification of the following sections of the charge:
Original Charge sections:

Section a - Ascertain if additional definitions are necessary to clarify the hand hygiene procedures listed in the Food Code.
. The HHC requested clarification whether the committee is also asked to provide recommendations for additional definitions if they are needed. The HHC provided the following recommended language: (Ascertain if additional definitions are necessary and proposed recommendations to clarify the hand hygiene procedures listed in the Food Code.

Section c - Identify situations where procedures exist to prevent hand soil and contamination. The HHC provided the following recommended language:
Identify methods and available research that describe where procedures exist to prevent hand soil and contamination.

Section d. Review available research on the efficacy and public health significance of antibacterial soaps, and their impact on hand hygiene procedures in the food industry. The committee voted unanimously to request that this charge be removed:

FDA published a proposed rule regarding the available data and FDA's criteria for establishing the safety and effectiveness of antiseptic washes for consumer use in December 2013. Although CDER has not yet defined antiseptic criteria for food handler use, we plan to address these products in the future.

The Executive Board denied the request to revise any of the charges and provided this guidance:

"The Committee can choose to explain how they fulfilled charges by the recommendations as stated in their report. However, charges cannot be changed or removed."

i. Regarding the first section of the Charge;1.a: Ascertain if additional definitions are necessary to clarify the hand hygiene procedures listed in the Food Code.

The committee considered this charge first and initially could not come to consensus that additional definitions were necessary to clarify the hand hygiene procedures in the Food Code. The group agreed to "table" this charge and work on the other charges and reconsider this item if gaps in definitions were identified through work on other charges.

After the HHC worked charge 1.b, the committee identified two potential definitions that would clarify the current hand hygiene procedures listed in the Food Code: HAND CLEANING COMPOUND and ANTISEPTIC HAND RUB The committee formed a small work group to research and recommend language to the whole committee. The entire HHC was able to achieve consensus to recommend the following be added as defined terms to the Food Code:

a) HAND CLEANING COMPOUND- A formulated hand hygiene product used to remove soils and transient microorganisms on hands, being submitted as Issue HHC-2

b) ANTISEPTIC HAND RUB- An antiseptic hand hygiene product applied to the hands and rubbed until dry, used to reduce the transient microorganisms, being submitted as Issue HHC-3

ii. Regarding the second section of the Charge; 1.b. Use current research including the documents created by the Committee's 2012-2014 work (Hand Contamination Event Hazard Chart; Questions to Consider when Evaluating Studies of Alternative Handwashing Approaches; and Scientific, Regulatory and Behavioral Consideration of Hand Hygiene Regimes) to determine if alternatives to hand hygiene procedures equivalent to those described in the Food Code are available.

The committee was charged with reviewing current research to determine if alternatives hand hygiene procedures exist that are equivalent to the hand hygiene procedures described in the Food Code.

The HHC began work on this charge on 12/4/14.

There was extensive discussion about how to approach this charge. The voting members voted unanimously on the following points:

a) There is no standard by which to determine "equivalent hand hygiene procedures"
b) To move forward by reviewing the submitted studies to look for trends in the literature.

The group divided into six small groups and each small work group was assigned a few of the studies listed below to review and report back to the whole group on the 1/29/15 call. The sub-committees met between 12/4/14 and 1/29/15.

The HHC reviewed the following studies:

- 2010-2012 Hand Hygiene Committee / Swanson Et. Al.,2012
- M. A. Davis, H. Sheng, J. Newman, D. D. Hancock and C. J. Hovde. "Comparison of waterless hand-hygiene preparation and soap-and-water hand washing to reduce coliforms on hands in animal exhibit settings". Epidemiol Infect 2006;134: 1024-1028..
- Sarah L. Edmonds,* James Mann, Robert R. Mccormack, David R. Macinga, Christopher M. Fricker, James W. Arbogast, And Michael J. Dolan. "SaniTwice: A Novel Approach to Hand Hygiene for Reducing Bacterial Contamination on Hands When Soap and Water are Unavailable". J Food Prot. 2010;73(12):2296-2300.
- Sarah L. Edmonds,* Robert R. Mccormack, Sifang Steve Zhou, David R. Macinga, and Christopher M. Fricker. "Hand Hygiene Regimens for Reduction of Risk on Food Service Environments" J Food Protect 2012;75(7):1303-1309.
- Sarah L. Edmonds, Ms; Carrie Zapka, Ms; Douglas Kasper, Md; Robert Gerber, Md;Robert Mccormack, Bs; David Macinga, Phd; Stuart Johnson, Md; Susan Sambol, Bs,Mt (Ascp); Christopher Fricker, Phd; James Arbogast, Phd; Dale N. Gerding, Md. "Effectiveness of Hand Hygiene for Removal of Clostridium difficile Spores from Hands". Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 2013;34(3):302-305.
- Angela Fraser, James W. Arbogast, Lee-Ann Jaykus, Richard Linton, and Didier Pittet. "Rethinking Hand Hygiene in the Retail and Foodservice Industries: Are Recommended Procedures Based on the Best Science and Practical Under Real-world Conditions?" Food Protection Tends. December 2012.
- Akrum H. Tamimi • Sheri Carlino •Sarah Edmonds • Charles P. Gerba. "Impact of Alcohol-Based Hand Sanitizer Intervention on the Spread of Viruses in Homes". Food Environ. Virol 2014.
- Pengbo Liu • David R. Macinga • Marina L. Fernandez •Carrie Zapka • Hui-Mien Hsiao • Brynn Berger, "Comparison of the Activity of Alcohol-Based Handrubs Against Human

Noroviruses Using the Fingerpad Method and Quantitative Real-Time PCR". Food Environ. Virol 2011;3:35-42.

- Liu, Macinga, Fernandez, Zapka, Hsiao, Berger, Arbogast, Moe. "Comparison of the Activity of Alcohol-Based Handrubs against Human Noroviruses Using the Fingerpad Method and Quantitative Real-Time PCR." Food and Environmental Virology, December 2010.
- Macinga, Sattar, Jaykus And Arbogast. "Improved Inactivation of Noneveloped Viruses and Their Surrogates by a Novel Alcohol-Based Hand Sanitizer". Appl. Environ. Microbiol 2008;74(16):5047-5052.
- Amy J. Pickering , Alexandria B. Boehm , Mathew Mwanjali , And Jennifer Davis. Efficacy of Waterless Hand Hygiene Compared with Handwashing Soap: A Field Study in Dar es Salaam , Tanzania. Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg 2010;82(2):270-278.
- Amy J. Pickering, Jennifer Davis And Alexandria B. Boehm "Efficacy of alcohol-based hand sanitizer on hands soiled with dirty and cooking oil" Journal of Water and Health 2011.
- Racicot, Kocher, Beauchamp, Letellier and Vaillancourt Assessing most practical and effective protocols to sanitize hands of poultry catching crew members. Preventive Vetinary Medicine 2013;111:92-99.
- Donald W. Schaffner* and Kristin M. Schaffner Management of Risk of Microbial Cross-Contamination from Uncooked Frozen Hamburgers by Alcohol-Based Hand Sanitizer. J. Food Protect 2007;70(1):109-113.
- Josie L. Traub-Dargatz, J. Scott Weese, Joyce D. Rousseau, Magdalena Dunowska,Paul S. Morley, David A. Dargatz. "Pilot study to evaluate 3 hygienic protocols on the reduction of bacterial load on the hands of veterinary staff performing routine equine physical examinations". Can Vet J 2006;47:671-676.

Each of the small work groups reported to the full committee on the results of their review of their assigned studies during the 1/29/15 HHC call. Overall, the majority of the studies reviewed by the group were not applicable directly to food service, or they were limited in scope and application. The primary conclusion reiterated by every small group during their review of the literature is that a standard to determine an alternative method for hand hygiene procedures "equivalency" does not exist but is necessary. The HHC members agreed that there is a real need for food service-focused research to understand the different levels of risk associated with different food handling activities in food establishments.

Since the literature review could not establish alternatives that are equivalent to the handwashing procedures, the group formed a sub-group to review and report back to the entire HHC their findings regarding the following published standard handwashing methods:

- ASTM E2011-13 (" Standard Test Method for Evaluation of Hygienic Handwash and Handrub Formulations for Virus-Eliminating Activity Using the Entire Hand")
- ASTM E2946-13 ("Standard Test Method for Determining the Bacteria-Reducing Effectiveness of Food-Handler Handwash Formulations Using Hands of Adults")ASTM E2783 ("Standard Test Method for Assessment of Antimicrobial Activity for Water Miscible Compounds Using a Time-Kill Procedure")
- ASTM 1174 ("Standard Test Method for Evaluation of the Effectiveness of Health Care Personnel Handwash Formulations")
- ASTM E2755 ("Standard Test Method for Determining the Bacteria-Eliminating Effectiveness of Healthcare Personnel Hand Rub Formulations Using Hands of Adults")
- EN 1276 ("Chemical disinfectants and antiseptics - Quantitative suspension test for the evaluation of bactericidal activity of chemical disinfectants and antiseptics used in food, industrial, domestic and institutional areas - Test method and requirements (phase 2, step 1)")

- EN 1499 (“Chemical disinfectants and antiseptics - Hygienic handwash - Test method and requirements (phase 2/step 2)”)
- EN 1500 (“Chemical disinfectants and antiseptics - Hygienic handrub - Test method and requirements (phase 2/step 2)”)

The subcommittee developed a Comparison of Selected Hand Hygiene Efficacy Test Methods table (attached) to review and evaluate all of the standard methods listed above to assess their strengths, limitations, reproducibility, and relevance in food settings. The subcommittee recommended to the full committee that ASTM E2783 and ASTM 2946 could be included in the Food Code in a meaningful and logical way; by creating science based performance standards for hand hygiene products used in the food industry.

No recommendations of equivalent alternate procedures could be made by the full committee based on the subcommittee’s findings of no agreed-upon performance measure comparable to the Food Code procedures exist.
It was shared with the committee that FDA is working to develop performance standards that will allow for the evaluation of different methods for soil removal from hands of food service workers or food production situations. No clear timeframe for these performance standards was available at this time.

The HHC recommends that a letter be sent to the FDA encouraging the development of handwashing performance standards.

iii. Regarding the third section of the Charge 1.c. Identify situations where procedures exist to prevent hand soil and contamination. The committee identified the following procedures that potentially prevent hand soil and contamination:

1. Properly using utensils. For example, filling a glass with ice using a scoop.
2. Handling raw animal foods with tongs instead of bare hands.
3. Properly using gloves.
4. Using other barriers when handling food, such as deli paper.
5. Segregating job duties so that the food handlers assigned to work with raw animal foods are not required to also handle ready to eat foods or other clean utensils.
6. Double-gloving.

iv. Regarding the fourth section of the Charge1.d. Review available research on the efficacy and public health significance of antibacterial soaps, and their impact on hand hygiene procedures in the food industry.

FDA published a proposed rule regarding the available data and FDA’s criteria for establishing the safety and effectiveness of antiseptic washes for consumer use in December, 2013: https://www.federalregister.gov/articles/2013/12/17/2013-29814/safety-and-effectiveness-of-consumer-antiseptics-topical-antimicrobial-drug-products-for
The FDA Center for Drug Evaluation and Research (CDER) has not yet defined antiseptic criteria for food handler use.

The Hand Hygiene Committee membership agreed that it was unable to complete this charge because any recommendations resulting from the charge would include FDA policy matters that are outside the scope of the CFP. Resolution of the charges requires the active

engagement of FDA CDER, a regulatory body for drugs, with FDA Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition (CFSAN) and interagency engagement is beyond the scope of CFP.

The HHC Recommends that a letter be sent to the FDA encouraging the FDA to work in conjunction with CDER to define antiseptic criteria for food handler use.

2. Recommendations for consideration by Council:
Based on the committee's work, the Committee Co-Chairs are submitting 3 issues on behalf of the Committee. Recommendations of this Committee through these issues are:

a. Thank the Committee for its work, acknowledge the Committee's report, and disband the Committee.
b. Add the following definition to the Food Code:
Hand Cleaning Compound - A formulated hand hygiene product used to remove soils and transient microorganisms on hands.
c) Add the following definition to the Food Code:
Antiseptic Hand Rub - An antiseptic hand hygiene product applied to the hands and rubbed until dry, used to reduce the transient microorganisms.
d) Recommend that a letter be sent to the FDA encouraging the development of handwashing performance standards.
e) Recommend that a letter be sent to the FDA encouraging the FDA to work in conjunction with CDER to define antiseptic criteria for food handler use.

CFP ISSUES TO BE SUBMITTED BY COMMITTEE:

1. Issue 1- Report- 2014-2016 Hand Hygiene Committee (HHC)
2. Issue 2- HHC Recommended Food Code Definitions for "Hand Cleaning Compound" and
3. Issue 3 – HHC Recommended Food Code Definitions for - "Antiseptic Hand Rub"
4. Issue 4 – HHC recommended letters to FDA

1) Recommend that a letter be sent to the FDA encouraging the development of handwashing performance standards.
2) Recommend that a letter be sent to the FDA encouraging the FDA to work in conjunction with CDER to define antiseptic criteria for food handler use.

COMMITTEE MEMBER ROSTER (attached):

Committee Name: 2014 - 2016 Hand Hygiene Committee - Council III

Last Name	First Name	Position (Chair/Member)	Constituency	Employer	City	Telephone	Email
Bongo-Box	Christina	Co-Chair	Food Service Industry	Popeyes Louisiana Kitchen Inc	Atlanta	(404) 459-4718	christinabongo@gmail.com
LeMaster	Lori	Co-Chair	State Regulator	TN Department of Health	Nashville	(615) 741-7206	lori.lemaster@tn.gov
Adams Hutt	Dr. Catherine	Member	Food Service Industry	National Restaurant Association	Aubrey	(630) 605-3022	cadams@rdrsol.com
Buffer	Janet	Member	Retail Food Industry	The Kroger Company	Cincinnati	(513) 387-7332	janet.buffer@kroger.com
Carotenuto	Tony	Member	Federal Regulator	Navy and Marine Corps Public Health Center	Portsmouth	(757) 953-0712	anthony.carotenuto@med.navy.mil
Funk	Joshua	Member	Food Service Industry	KFC	Louisville	(502) 874-8899	joshua.funk@yum.com
Gaither	Marlene	Member	Local Regulator	Coconino County (AZ) Health Department	Flagstaff	(928) 679-8761	mgaither@coconino.az.gov
Huffman	Troy	Member	State Regulator	Nebraska Department of Health and Human Services	Lincoln	(402) 471-0387	troy.huffman@nebraska.gov
Johnson	Anna	Member	State Regulator	FL Dept of Agriculture	Deltona	(407)335-3497	anna.johnson@freshfromflorida.com
Oswald	Steve	Member	Retail Food Industry	Wakefern Food Corporation	Elizebeth	(908) 527-3624	steve.oswald@wakefern.com
Sanchez	Angela	Member	Food Service Industry	CKE Restaurants Holdings Inc.	Ontario	(714) 254-4556	asanchez@ckr.com
Schaffner	Donald	Member	Academia	Rutgers University	Freehold	(732) 982-7475	schaffner@aesop.rutgers.edu
Tracey	Stephen	Member	Retail Food Industry	Delhaize America/Food Lion	Salisbury	(704) 223-0320	smtracey@foodlion.com

Yasin	Jemal	Member	Local Regulator	District of Columbia, Department of Health	Washington	(202) 380-6595	jemalyasin@yahoo.com
Westbrook	Tim	Member	Retail Food Industry	Publix Super Markets, Inc.	Lakeland	(352) 989-7314	tim.westbrook@publix.com
Arbogast	James	At Large	Retail Food Industry	Gojo Industries, Inc.	Akron	(330) 255-6207	arbogasj@gojo.com
Buswell	Cheri	At Large	Food Service Industry	International Dairy Queen	Minneapolis	(952) 830-0224	cheri.buswell@idq.com
Deslauriers	Susan	At Large	Retail Food Industry	Big Y Foods	Springfield	(413) 504-4452	deslaurs@bigy.com
Horn	Jason	At Large	Food Service Industry	In-N-Out Burger	Baldwin Park	(626) 813-5326	JHorn@innout.com
Kreske	Dr. Audrey C.	At Large	Food Service Industry	Burger King Corporation	Miami	(305) 378-7432	akreske@whopper.com
Lowe	Ryan	At Large	Food Service Industry	Walt Disney Parks and Resorts	Lake Buena Vista	(407) 827-5524	ryan.m.lowe@disney.com
Patel	Jaymin	At Large	Retail Food Industry	Aramark	Philadelphia	(215) 409-7343	patel-jaymin@aramark.com
Samarya-Timm	Michele	At Large	Local Regulator	Somerset County Department of Health	Somerville	(908) 231-7155	SamaryaTim@aol.com
Shumaker	David	At Large	Retail Food Industry	GOJO Industries	Akron	(330) 255-6749	shumakerd@gojo.com
Snyder Ph.D.	Peter	At Large	Food Service Industry	SnyderHACCP	Roseville	651-646-7077	pete@snyderhaccp.com
Starobin	Dr. Anna	At Large	Retail Food Industry	Ecolab	Greensboro	(336) 854-8269	anna.starobin@ecolab.com
Cartagena	Mary	Consultant	FDA	FDA	College Park	240-402-2937	mary.cartagena@fda.hhs.gov
Otto	Jessica	Consultant	FDA - alternate	FDA	College Park	240-402-1876	jessica.otto@fda.hhs.gov

Table 1. Comparison of selected hand hygiene efficacy test methods by key step or variable

Key Step or Variable	ASTM E2783 (Time Kill)	EN 1276	Chlorine Equivalency former USDA E2/E3 rating)	ASTM E1174	ASTM E2755	ASTM E2946	ASTM E2011	EN 1499	EN 1500
Vitro/vivo	In Vitro	In Vitro	In Vitro	In Vivo	In Vivo	In Vivo	In Vivo	In Vivo	In Vivo
Purpose / Target Application in Design	"In vitro" hand hygiene product evaluation	"In vitro" antimicrobial activity of disinfectants and hand hygiene products	• "In vitro" designed to test efficacy of halogen based disinfectants and sanitizers	"In vivo" product evaluation ("healthcare personnel hand wash")	"In vivo" activity of hand hygiene personnel hand rubs	"In vivo" activity of food handler hand hygiene formulations	"In vivo" antiviral activity of hand hygiene formulations	"In vivo" hand washes – ensure a minimum performance standard	"In vivo" hand rubs – ensure a minimum performance standard
Test Organism(s)	*Any BSL 1 or 2 organisms; we could recommend a specific list that are highly food relevant (e.g. e. Coli, listeria, salmonella, etc.)*	*Ps. aeruginosa ATCC 15442, E. coli ATCC 10536,* *S. aureus ATCC 6538, Enterococcus hirae ATCC 10541*	*S. aureus ATCC 6538* *S. typhi ATCC 6539*	*Serratia marcescens and E. coli*	*Serratia marcescens ATCC 14756* *S. aureus ATCC 6538, or 33591*	*E. coli ATCC 11229*	*Human Rotavirus, Human Rhinovirus Type 37, Feline calicivirus, Human Adenovirus Type 5*	*E. coli K12 NCTC 10538*	*E. coli K12 NCTC 10538*

Key Step or Variable	ASTM E2783 (Time Kill)	EN 1276	Chlorine Equivalency former USDA E2/E3 rating)	ASTM E1174	ASTM E2755	ASTM E2946	ASTM E2011	EN 1499	EN 1500
Soil Type(s):	None	Flexible: Can be chosen based on the condition of use	Inoculated broth	4.5 mL of inoculums in nutrient broth	0.2 mL of inoculum in nutrient broth	Beef broth is "moderate" soil, Hamburger is "heavy" soil	Bovine serum	Inoculated broth	Inoculated broth
Soil Load (Quantity):	Volume of the inoculum in Nutrient broth used	0.3g/L clean conditions; 3 g/L dirty conditions	10 µl of inoculated broth for tube 1 and total 100 µl for tube 10	4.5 mL of inoculums in Nutrient broth	0.2 mL of inoculum in nutrient broth	4.5 mL of Beef broth for moderate soil Handling contaminated hamburger for 2 min	5% in the virus inoculum	Amount of inoculated broth which ends up on the hands during immersion of the hands	None specifically added. Just dried TSB from inoculating broth
Method of Contamination:	Inoculation of the product	Inoculation of the product	Inoculation of the product	3 -1.5 mL of an overnight broth culture of the test organism	200µl of a concentrated broth suspension of the test organism	4.5 mL of Beef broth for moderate soil Handling contaminated hamburger for 2 min	1.5 mL of the suspension, 90 sec spread, 90 sec dry Or 20µL of virus suspension on each finger tip	Immersion into seeded broth	Immersion into seeded broth
Baseline Recovery (Pre-Test Value):	Not specified	$1.5x10^8$-$5x10^8$	N/A	$5x10^8$-$1x10^9$ Liquid suspension used for contamination. Recovery is not specified	$\geq 10^8$ cfu/hand (Usually 8.5-9.0 log10 cfu/hand)	Suspension $1x10^8$	The virus "pull" shall contain $\geq 10^7$ infective unit/mL	Inoculum $2x10^8$-$2x10^9$ Log pre-values at least 5	Inoculum $2x10^8$-$2x10^9$ Log pre-values at least 5 per mL

Key Step or Variable	ASTM E2783 (Time Kill)	EN 1276	Chlorine Equivalency former USDA E2/E3 rating)	ASTM E1174	ASTM E2755	ASTM E2946	ASTM E2011	EN 1499	EN 1500
Test Article Application Details:	N/A	N/A	N/A	5 mL of the test product during handwashing using 40°C water for 1 min handwashing	1.5 ml of a test material (calculations for foaming materials provided)	5 mL of the test material Wash for 30±5 sec, rinse for 30±5 sec	Volume specified by manufacturer	3 ml applied and washed for 30 or 60 sec +15 sec rinse or following manufacturer instructions	3 ml applied and rubbed for 30 seconds, then sampled
Number of Subjects / Replicates (Minimum, Recommended)	N/A	N/A	N/A	Not specified FDA CDER asks for at least 12 subjects	At least 8 subjects Total depends on number of test materials, study purpose, and regulatory requirements governing the study.	At least 8 subjects	At least 6 subjects	At least 12 subjects	18-22 subjects
Internal Reference:	None	None	Referenced Chlorine solution	None	None	None	None	Soft soap (British Pharmacopoeia 1993) 200g/L	2x3ml of 60% isopropanol rubbed for 60 seconds total
Acceptance Criteria:	None	5 log reduction	Test article is at least equivalent to 50 ppm chlorine	None in the test method. Per 2015 FDA HC TFM: 2 Logs after the 1st application, 3 Logs after 10th application	None in the test method.	None in the test method.	None in the test method	Statistically non-inferior to the reference product	Statistically non-inferior to the reference product

Key Step or Variable	ASTM E2783 (Time Kill)	EN 1276	Chlorine Equivalency former USDA E2/E3 rating)	ASTM E1174	ASTM E2755	ASTM E2946	ASTM E2011	EN 1499	EN 1500
Can bland Handwash be a benchmark?	Yes, not in the test method	N/A	N/A	Yes, not in the test method	N/A	Yes, not in the test method	Yes, not in the test method	N/A	N/A
Product dilution	Undiluted	Undiluted	Undiluted	Undiluted	Undiluted	Undiluted	Undiluted	Undiluted	Undiluted
Contact time	Flexible; most typical is 15 sec, 30 sec and 60 sec.	5 min	1, 2.5 and 5 min	30 sec lather + 30 sec rinse	1.5 mL application volume, Rub until hands are dry. Or manufacturer's recommendations	30±5 sec	10-20 sec for handwash, 20-30 sec for hand rub, or other times representative use condition time	30 or 60 sec +15 sec rinse or following manufacturer instructions	30 sec

Table 2. Comparison of selected hand hygiene test methods by strengths and limitations and suitability for inclusion in Model Food Code

Method	Strengths	Limitations	Expected variability and reproducibility	Relevance and Fit for Food Code (H/M/L)	Recommended for CFP & Food Code
ASTM E2783 (Time Kill)	"In vitro" test, relatively inexpensive, can be run with many organisms and by many labs with good reproducibility. Large amount of data and experience using this method	"In vitro" test (i.e. results will not necessarily predict real world hand hygiene results or the *in-vivo* methods)	Results more variable when the product has high foam; results are highly dependent of the mixing technique	High: Good screening test, should be required as a means to ensure broad spectrum antimicrobial effectiveness before "in vivo" testing.	**Yes**
Chlorine Equivalency	"In vitro" test. Long history of use	Risks posed by working with *S. typhi* (typhoid fever) Data is not relevant for hand antiseptics in general, especially those that do not contain halogen based active ingredients	Products with border line efficacy have high variability in results	Low	No
EN 1276	"In vitro" test Includes options of soils to be added, based on the industry. Could be tested for clean and dirty conditions	Some of microorganisms are not relevant for food retail use The test method is not designed for chemistries affected by soil	No	Low	No
ASTM 1174	"In vivo" test	Designed for healthcare	Fair reproducibility	Medium	No

Method	Strengths	Limitations	Expected variability and reproducibility	Relevance and Fit for Food Code (H/M/L)	Recommended for CFP & Food Code
	A lot of data available for this test	applications No soil used besides the inoculum broth *E. coli* (not *Serratia*) should be required for food retail application	Cannot compare across tests		
ASTM E2755	"In vivo"	Price of the test (relatively expensive) Some of microorganisms are not relevant for food retail use	Fair reproducibility Cannot compare across tests	Medium	No
ASTM E2946	"In vivo" test Designed for food handler applications (bacteria) Two different food relevant soils (moderate and heavy)	Recently released, so limited experience with the method	Fair reproducibility Cannot compare across tests	High	**Yes**
ASTM E2011	"In vivo" test	No soil used besides the inoculum broth Viruses only Viruses are not included in FDA CDER Monograph for hand antiseptics.	Fair reproducibility Cannot compare across tests	Medium (viruses only)	No

Method	Strengths	Limitations	Expected variability and reproducibility	Relevance and Fit for Food Code (H/M/L)	Recommended for CFP & Food Code
EN 1499	"In vivo" test	Designed for healthcare applications Limited history of use in US	No	Low	No
EN 1500	"In vivo" test	Designed for healthcare applications Limited history of use in US	No	Low	No

Journal of Food Protection, Vol. 73, No. 12, 2010, Pages 2296–2300
Copyright ©, International Association for Food Protection

Research Note

SaniTwice: A Novel Approach to Hand Hygiene for Reducing Bacterial Contamination on Hands When Soap and Water Are Unavailable

SARAH L. EDMONDS,[1]* JAMES MANN,[2] ROBERT R. McCORMACK,[3] DAVID R. MACINGA,[1] CHRISTOPHER M. FRICKER,[1] JAMES W. ARBOGAST,[1] AND MICHAEL J. DOLAN[1]

[1]*GOJO Industries, Inc., P.O. Box 991, Akron, Ohio 44309;* [2]*Handwashing for Life, 1216 Flamingo Parkway, Libertyville, Illinois 60048; and* [3]*BioScience Laboratories, Inc., 300 North Willson Avenue, Suite 1, Bozeman, Montana 59715, USA*

MS 10-220: Received 25 May 2010/Accepted 27 August 2010

ABSTRACT

The risk of inadequate hand hygiene in food handling settings is exacerbated when water is limited or unavailable, thereby making washing with soap and water difficult. The SaniTwice method involves application of excess alcohol-based hand sanitizer (ABHS), hand ''washing'' for 15 s, and thorough cleaning with paper towels while hands are still wet, followed by a standard application of ABHS. This study investigated the effectiveness of the SaniTwice methodology as an alternative to hand washing for cleaning and removal of microorganisms. On hands moderately soiled with beef broth containing *Escherichia coli* (ATCC 11229), washing with a nonantimicrobial hand washing product achieved a 2.86 ($\pm$0.64)-log reduction in microbial contamination compared with the baseline, whereas the SaniTwice method with 62% ethanol (EtOH) gel, 62% EtOH foam, and 70% EtOH advanced formula gel achieved reductions of 2.64 $\pm$ 0.89, 3.64 $\pm$ 0.57, and 4.61 $\pm$ 0.33 log units, respectively. When hands were heavily soiled from handling raw hamburger containing *E. coli,* washing with nonantimicrobial hand washing product and antimicrobial hand washing product achieved reductions of 2.65 $\pm$ 0.33 and 2.69 $\pm$ 0.32 log units, respectively, whereas SaniTwice with 62% EtOH foam, 70% EtOH gel, and 70% EtOH advanced formula gel achieved reductions of 2.87 $\pm$ 0.42, 2.99 $\pm$ 0.51, and 3.92 $\pm$ 0.65 log units, respectively. These results clearly demonstrate that the in vivo antibacterial efficacy of the SaniTwice regimen with various ABHS is equivalent to or exceeds that of the standard hand washing approach as specified in the U.S. Food and Drug Administration Food Code. Implementation of the SaniTwice regimen in food handling settings with limited water availability should significantly reduce the risk of foodborne infections resulting from inadequate hand hygiene.

Foodborne diseases are a serious public health concern *(3, 4, 15),* but despite preventive efforts there has been little recent progress in reducing infections caused by foodborne pathogens *(6)*. Faulty food handling practices, particularly improper hand washing, contribute significantly to the risk for foodborne disease *(11–13, 19, 25–27, 29)*. Proper hand hygiene reduces the risk of transmission of pathogens from hands to food *(7, 20, 21)* and is associated with a reduction in gastrointestinal illness *(2, 8, 18)*. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) Food Code for retail establishments requires hand washing as a preventive method and provides specific guidance on proper hand washing procedures *(30)*. The five-step hand washing procedure outlined in the FDA Food Code consists of (i) rinsing under warm running water, (ii) applying the manufacturer-recommended amount of cleaning compound, (iii) rubbing the hands vigorously, (iv) rinsing thoroughly under warm running water, and (v) thoroughly drying the hands with individual paper towels, a continuous clean towel system, or a heated or pressurized hand air drying device. According to the Food Code, alcohol-based hand sanitizers (ABHS) may be used in retail and food service only after proper hand washing.

ABHS are recommended as an alternative to traditional hand washing in the health care setting *(5)*. Alcohols are highly effective against a range of bacterial pathogens, fungi, enveloped viruses, and certain nonenveloped viruses *(2, 10)*. Although considered to be ineffective antimicrobial agents in the presence of visible dirt or proteinaceous material, alcohol-containing products were more effective than those containing triclosan *(2, 14)* or detergents *(17)* for removing microorganisms from hands contaminated with organic material. In health care facilities and other environments, easily accessible ABHS have resulted in greater hand hygiene compliance and reduction in infections *(1, 9, 16, 31)*. Although ABHS are approved for use in the health care environment, the FDA does not regard these agents as adequate substitutes for soap and water in the food service setting *(30)*.

A reliable hand hygiene method is needed for food service settings in which adequate hand washing facilities are limited or unavailable. These settings include portable bars, buffet lines, outdoor events, and catering functions at which the only available hand hygiene facility often is either ''trickle hand washing'' (i.e., hand washing done from a

* Author for correspondence. Tel: 330-255-6745; Fax: 330-255-6083: E-mail: edmondss@gojo.com.

portable container of water over a bucket or other type of basin) or simply the use of a paper towel or damp cloth to rub the hands. These methods may be inadequate for proper hand cleansing.

SaniTwice (a registered trademark with James Mann, Handwashing for Life, Libertyville, IL) is a two-stage hand cleansing protocol that is performed using ABHS when water is not available. In this study, we evaluated the microbiological efficacy of the SaniTwice method on the hands of adult human participants. These studies were designed to assess (i) the antimicrobial efficacy of various ABHS used with the SaniTwice regimen as compared with that of a standard hand washing method with soap and water on soiled hands and (ii) the impact of the active ingredient and/or formulation of a hand sanitizer on antibacterial efficacy when used in a SaniTwice regimen.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Test products. All test products in this study were manufactured by GOJO Industries (Akron, OH). Two hand washing products were evaluated: a nonantimicrobial product (GOJO Luxury Foam Handwash) and an antimicrobial product (MICRELL Antibacterial Foam Handwash, 0.5% chloroxylenol active). Four ABHS also were evaluated: a 62% ethanol (EtOH) gel (PURELL Instant Hand Sanitizer Food Code Compliant), a 62% EtOH foam (PURELL Instant Hand Sanitizer Foam), a 70% EtOH gel (PURELL 70 Instant Hand Sanitizer), and a 70% EtOH Advanced Formula (AF) gel (PURELL Instant Hand Sanitizer Advanced Formula VF481).

Overall study design. Three studies were conducted by BioScience Laboratories (Bozeman, MT) to determine the in vivo antimicrobial efficacy of various test product configurations under conditions of moderate or heavy soil. The order of use of each product was determined randomly. A two-step testing sequence was used for all products. Each volunteer completed the baseline cycle, where hands were contaminated with moderate or heavy soil (as described below) containing *Escherichia coli* (ATCC 11229), and samples were collected for baseline bacterial counts. Following the baseline sampling, participants completed a 30-s nonmedicated soap wash followed by the product evaluation cycle, which consisted of a contamination procedure, application of the test product, and subsequent hand sampling. Between uses of different test products, participants decontaminated their hands with a 1-min 70% EtOH rinse, air drying, and a 30-s nonmedicated soap wash. A minimum of 20 min elapsed before the next testing sequence began. Baseline and postapplication samples were evaluated for the presence of *E. coli*. Testing was performed according to the FDA health care personnel hand washing product evaluation method *(28)* and modified as described previously *(22)*.

The study was approved by the Gallatin Institutional Review, an independent review board unaffiliated with BioScience Laboratories, and was conducted in compliance with Good Clinical Practice and Good Laboratory Practice regulations. All participants provided written informed consent.

Participants. The study enrolled healthy adults with two hands. All participants were free of dermal allergies or skin disorders on the hands or forearms.

Preparation of inoculum. *E. coli* was used to test the efficacy of the test procedures. A 2-liter flask was filled with 1,000 ml of tryptic soy broth: 30.0 g of dehydrated tryptic soy broth medium (BD, Franklin Lakes, NJ) added to 1 liter of deionized water, heated, and sterilized for a final pH of 7.3 ± 0.20. The broth was inoculated with 1.0 ml of a 24-h culture of *E. coli* grown from a cryogenic stock culture. The flask was incubated for 24 h, and the suspension was used for challenge.

Hand contamination procedures. For the moderate soil study, a 24-h culture of *E. coli* was suspended in beef broth (Swanson low sodium beef broth, Campbell Soup Company, Camden, NJ) at 1×10^9 CFU/ml. Three aliquots of 1.5 ml were transferred into each participant's cupped hands. Each aliquot was distributed over the entire front and back surfaces of the hands up to the wrists during a 20-s period and allowed to air dry for 30 s after the first and second aliquots and for 90 s after the third aliquot. After samples were collected for baseline bacterial counts and hands were decontaminated with a 30-s wash with nonmedicated soap, a second cycle of contamination was initiated. After the 90-s final drying step, participants applied the randomly assigned test product.

For the heavy soil study, 5.0-ml aliquots of the challenge suspension of *E. coli* were transferred to 4-oz (113-g) portions of sterile 90% lean ground beef and distributed evenly with gloved hands to achieve contamination levels of approximately 5.0×10^8 CFU per portion. Each participant then kneaded the inoculated raw hamburger for 2 min. Hands were air dried for 90 s and then sampled for baseline counts. After a 30-s decontamination with nonmedicated soap, the cycle was repeated, and the test product was applied.

Test article or product application and SaniTwice procedure. The hand washing procedure used for the nonantimicrobial and antimicrobial hand washing products was consistent with Food Code specifications. Table 1 shows the stepwise product application procedures for all test configurations.

Bacterial recovery and microbial enumeration. Within 1 min after contamination for baseline evaluation or after product application, powder-free sterile latex gloves were placed on each participant's hands and secured above the wrist, and 75 ml of sterile stripping fluid (0.4 g of KH_2PO_4, 10.1 g of Na_2HPO_4, and 1.0 g of isooctylphenoxypolyethoxyethanol in 1 liter of distilled water, pH adjusted to 7.8) was transferred into each glove. Following a 60-s massage of the hands through the gloves, a 5.0-ml aliquot of the glove rinsate sample was removed and diluted in 5.0 ml of Butterfield's phosphate buffer solution with product neutralizers. Each aliquot was serially diluted in neutralizing solution, and appropriate dilutions were plated in duplicate onto MacConkey agar plates (BD; 50.0 g of dehydrated medium added to 1 liter of deionized water, heated, and sterilized; final pH, 7.1 ± 0.2) and incubated for 24 to 48 h at 30°C. Colonies were counted and data were recorded using the computerized Q-COUNT plate-counting systems (Advanced Instruments, Inc., Norwood, MA).

Data analysis and statistical considerations. The estimated log transformed number of viable microorganisms recovered from each hand (the R value) was determined using the formula $R = \log(75 \times C_i \times 10^D \times 2)$, where 75 is the amount (in milliliters) of stripping solution instilled into each glove, C_i is the arithmetic average colony count of the two plate counts at a particular dilution, D is the dilution factor, and 2 is the neutralization dilution.

Descriptive statistics and confidence intervals were calculated using the 0.05 level of significance for type I (alpha) error. Statistical calculations of means and standard deviations were

TABLE 1. *Test product application procedures*[a]

Step	Food Code–compliant procedure for hand washing products	SaniTwice[b] procedure for ABHS	Procedure for 70% EtOH AF gel
1	Wet hands with water at 40°C	Dispense ~3 ml of product into cupped hands	Dispense ~1.5 ml of product into cupped hands
2	Apply ~1.5 ml of product	Rub vigorously over hands for 15 s to simulate washing	Rub hands together until dry
3	Lather for 15 s	Clean thoroughly with two paper towels	
4	Rinse with water for 10 s	Dispense additional ~1.5 ml of product	
5	Pat dry with two paper towels	Rub hands together until dry	

[a] All application procedures were initiated within 10 s of completing the 90-s drying step.
[b] SaniTwice is a registered trademark with James Mann (Handwashing for Life, Libertyville, IL).

generated for the log recovery data from baseline samples, postproduct application samples, and the log differences between baseline and postapplication samples. Product comparisons were made using a one-way analysis of variance with post hoc analysis (Bonferroni's multiple comparison test) using the 0.05 level of significance for alpha error.

RESULTS

Reduction in microbial contamination of moderately soiled hands. Two studies were conducted to evaluate microbial count reductions on hands that had been contaminated by handling beef broth containing *E. coli*. Reductions from baseline produced by the five test product configurations in these two studies are shown in Figure 1.

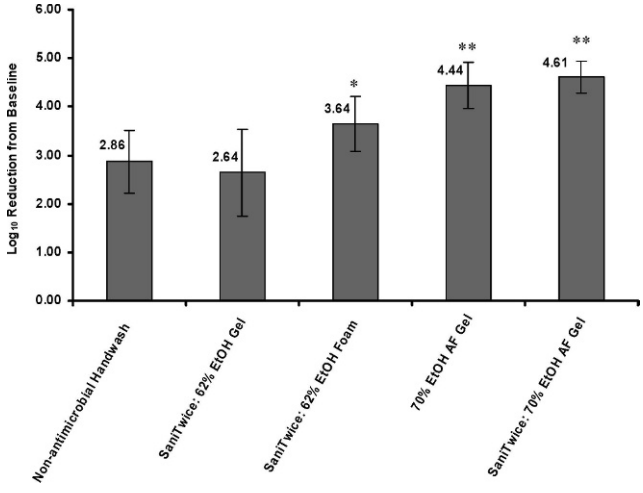


FIGURE 1. *Log reduction from baseline for microbial contamination of hands moderately soiled with contaminated beef broth after application of test products. Error bars represent standard deviation. Data are from two separate studies. In study 1 (*n = *11), nonantimicrobial hand washing product and SaniTwice with 62% EtOH gel were compared. In study 2 (*n = *12), the conditions evaluated were nonantimicrobial hand washing product, SaniTwice with 62% EtOH foam, 70% EtOH AF gel without SaniTwice, and SaniTwice with 70% EtOH AF gel. Results for nonantimicrobial hand washing product represent pooled data from both studies.* * P < *0.05 for SaniTwice with 62% EtOH foam versus nonantimicrobial hand washing product or SaniTwice with 62% EtOH gel.* ** P < *0.05 for 70% EtOH AF gel or for SaniTwice with 70% AF gel versus nonantimicrobial hand washing product, SaniTwice with 62% EtOH gel, or SaniTwice with 62% EtOH foam.*

All SaniTwice regimens were equivalent to or better than the Food Code hand washing protocol. Reductions from baseline ranged from 2.64 ± 0.89 log CFU/ml for SaniTwice with the 62% EtOH gel to 4.61 ± 0.33 log CFU/ml for SaniTwice with the 70% EtOH AF gel.

SaniTwice using the 62% EtOH gel was equivalent to the nonantimicrobial Food Code hand washing protocol. However, SaniTwice using the 62% EtOH foam (3.64 ± 0.57-log reduction) was more effective than SaniTwice with the 62% EtOH gel and the Food Code hand washing protocol ($P < 0.05$).

The 70% EtOH AF gel was the most effective sanitizing product. When used independently, it was significantly more effective (4.44 ± 0.47-log reduction) than SaniTwice with 62% EtOH foam or 62% EtOH gel or the nonantimicrobial hand washing product ($P < 0.05$ for all comparisons). Although the log reduction data suggest that SaniTwice with 70% EtOH AF gel (4.61 ± 0.33-log reduction) was equivalent to the 70% EtOH AF gel used independently, this lack of differentiation was most likely due to the limitations of the assay. The 4.61-log reduction was at the limit of detection for all participants using 70% EtOH AF gel with SaniTwice but for only half the participants using 70% EtOH AF gel alone. Therefore, the log reductions produced by the 70% EtOH AF gel after either a single sanitization or the SaniTwice regimen are likely underestimated, and the log reductions in both cases would likely be higher if the limits of detection were lower.

Reduction in microbial contamination of heavily soiled hands. Figure 2 shows microbial count reductions produced by test product configurations on hands that had been contaminated by handling ground beef containing *E. coli*. All SaniTwice regimens tested were equivalent to or better than the Food Code hand washing protocol, indicating that under conditions of heavy soil, the SaniTwice procedure is as effective as hand washing. The performance of the antimicrobial hand washing product was equivalent to that of the nonantimicrobial hand washing product in this heavy soil challenge, with log reductions of 2.69 ± 0.32 and 2.65 ± 0.33, respectively. SaniTwice with the 70% EtOH AF gel outperformed all other sanitizer configurations tested and was superior to hand washing for reduction of organisms on heavily soiled hands ($P < 0.05$ for comparisons of SaniTwice with 70% EtOH AF gel versus each of the other procedures).

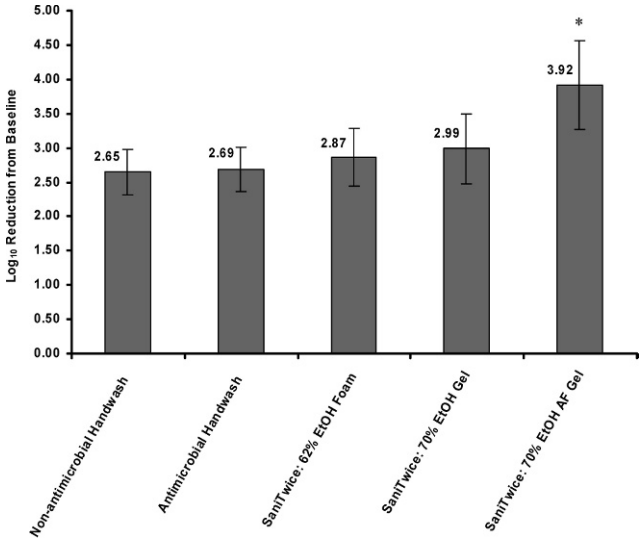


FIGURE 2. *Log reduction from baseline for microbial contamination of hands heavily soiled with contaminated uncooked hamburger after application of test products and protocols. Error bars represent standard deviation. Data are from study 3 (*n = *15), in which five test configurations were evaluated.* * P < *0.05 for SaniTwice with 70% AF gel versus nonantimicrobial hand washing product, antimicrobial hand washing product, SaniTwice with 62% EtOH foam, or SaniTwice with 70% EtOH gel.*

Two ABHS used with SaniTwice under both moderate and heavy soil conditions produced greater log reductions in the moderate soil condition. Mean log reductions using SaniTwice (moderate versus heavy soil) were 3.64 versus 2.87 for 62% EtOH foam and 4.61 versus 3.92 for 70% EtOH AF gel.

DISCUSSION

The SaniTwice method for hand disinfection was equivalent or superior to hand washing with soap and water for reducing viable bacteria on hands in the presence of representative food soils. Although the raw hamburger was a more difficult soil to penetrate, as demonstrated by approximately 1.0-log lower reductions compared with challenge by contaminated beef broth, the SaniTwice method with ABHS was equivalent to hand washing even under this worst-case simulation, underscoring the efficacy of this new method and indicating a potentially greater margin of safety.

The ABHS products used in this study exhibited a range of antimicrobial efficacy, suggesting that product formulation and the concentration of active ingredient may play a role in the observed efficacy. The impact of formulation was indicated by the significantly higher efficacy of the 62% EtOH foam compared with the 62% EtOH gel when challenged with moderate soil. This difference may be due to the additional foaming surfactants in the foam formulation, which may aid in lifting and removing bacteria and soil from the hands during the SaniTwice procedure. In addition, SaniTwice with the 70% EtOH AF gel was superior to SaniTwice with the 70% EtOH gel and 62% EtOH foam under heavy soil conditions. The 70% EtOH AF gel, whether tested as a single application or with the SaniTwice method, was superior to hand washing and to the 62% EtOH gel or foam under moderate soil conditions. The 4.44-log reduction with a single use of the 70% EtOH AF gel demonstrates its high antimicrobial efficacy, which is further enhanced when used with the SaniTwice method. The 70% EtOH AF gel contains a patent-pending blend of ingredients that enhance the activity of the alcohol and likely contribute to the high efficacy observed in this study. The SaniTwice procedure gives the benefit of skin cleansing and soil removal, which is not obtained with single use of a product. The efficacy of ABHS used with SaniTwice against nonenveloped enteric viruses, which are more difficult to eradicate, remains to be determined.

In support of previous findings *(23),* the findings in this study indicate that the decontamination efficacy was similar for the antimicrobial and nonantimicrobial hand washing products under heavy soil conditions, suggesting that the cleansing properties of the surfactants in these soaps and the mechanical action of hand washing may be the primary contributors to efficacy rather than the antimicrobial activity of any constituent of the formulations. It is expected that with heavy hand soiling, the surfactant effect drives efficacy, and typical antibacterial constituents will have little additional effect.

In this study, SaniTwice was an effective hand hygiene regimen at least equivalent to hand washing with soap and water for reducing microbial contamination, even under worst case conditions of high bacterial load and heavy food soils. The current FDA Food Code allows use of ABHS only on hands that have been cleaned according to the recommended hand washing protocol *(30)*. However, other than substitution of an ABHS for soap and water, the SaniTwice protocol mirrors the FDA-specified hand washing sequence. SaniTwice is at least as effective as hand washing when used with standard-efficacy ABHS; when used with a high-efficacy ABHS, the SaniTwice protocol is superior to washing with soap and water. The Food Code provides few specific recommendations for achieving good hand hygiene when water (or other hand washing supplies and equipment) is unavailable or limited. The Food Code (Section 2-301.16) severely restricts hand sanitizers by allowing use only after proper hand washing or in situations in which no direct contact with food occurs *(30)*.

A potential solution to this gap in food safety practices is SaniTwice. The SaniTwice studies described here provide convincing scientific rationale for including the SaniTwice approach in the Food Code as an alternative method of hand hygiene when standard hand washing is impractical. The simplicity and ease of use of the SaniTwice method, which requires only a supply of ABHS and paper towels, should allow this protocol to be applied to various food service settings and other areas in which hand hygiene is needed but safe water is unavailable or in short supply.

The findings in the present study support and extend those from previous studies; ABHS used alone or in combination with hand washing can be effective for decontaminating hands in the presence of organic soils *(17, 23, 24)*. A well-formulated ABHS in conjunction with

the SaniTwice regimen can have high efficacy, even in the presence of high organic load. Therefore, a reevaluation of the longstanding paradigm defining the use of ABHS in the presence of organic soils in both food handling and health care environments is warranted.

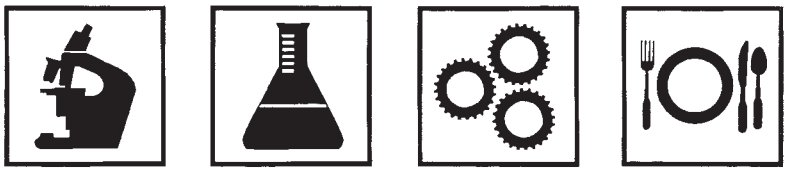
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Lakshmi Kamath and Meher Dustoor assisted in the preparation of this manuscript for publication.

REFERENCES

1. Bischoff, W. E., T. M. Reynolds, C. N. Sessler, M. B. Edmond, and R. P. Wenzel. 2000. Handwashing compliance by health care workers: the impact of introducing an accessible, alcohol-based hand antiseptic. *Arch. Intern. Med.* 160:1017–1021.
2. Bloomfield, S., A. Aiello, B. Cookson, C. O'Boyle, and E. Larson. 2007. The effectiveness of hand hygiene procedures in reducing the risks of infections in home and community settings including handwashing and alcohol-based hand sanitizers. *Am. J. Infect. Control* 35:S27–S64.
3. Buzby, J. C., and T. Roberts. 1997. The economics of enteric infections: human foodborne disease costs. *Gastroenterology* 136: 1851–1862.
4. Buzby, J. C., and T. Roberts. 2009. Economic costs and trade impacts of microbial foodborne illness. *World Health Stat. Q.* 50:57–66.
5. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. 2002. Guidelines for hand hygiene in health-care settings: recommendations of the Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee and the HICPAC/SHEA/APIC/IDSA Hand Hygiene Task Force. *Morb. Mortal. Wkly. Rep.* 51:1–56.
6. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. 2009. Preliminary FoodNet data on the incidence of infection with pathogens transmitted commonly through food—10 states. 2008. *Morb. Mortal. Wkly. Rep.* 58:333–337.
7. Courtenay, M., L. Ramirez, B. Cox, I. Han, X. Jiang, and P. Dawson. 2005. Effects of various hand hygiene regimes in removal and/or destruction of *Escherichia coli* on hands. *Food Serv. Technol.* 5:77–84.
8. Curtis, V., and S. Cairncross. 2003. Effect of washing hands with soap on diarrhea risk in the community: a systematic review. *Lancet Infect. Dis.* 3:275–281.
9. Fendler, E. J., Y. Ali, B. S. Hammond, M. K. Lyons, M. B. Kelley, and N. A. Vowell. 2002. The impact of alcohol hand sanitizer use on infection rates in an extended care facility. *Am. J. Infect. Control* 30: 226–233.
10. Fendler, E. J., and P. Groziak. 2002. Efficacy of alcohol-based hand sanitizers against fungi and viruses. *Infect. Control Hosp. Epidemiol.* 23:61–62.
11. Green, L. R., V. Radke, R. Mason, L. Bushnell, D. W. Reimann, J. C. Mack, M. D. Motsinger, T. Stigger, and C. A. Selman. 2007. Factors related to food worker hand hygiene practices. *J. Food Prot.* 70:661–666.
12. Green, L. R., C. A. Selman, V. Radke, D. Ripley, J. C. Mack, D. W. Reimann, T. Stigger, M. Motsinger, and L. Bushnell. 2006. Food worker hand washing practices: an observation study. *J. Food Prot.* 69:2417–2423.
13. Guzevich, J., and M. Ross. 1999. Evaluation of risks related to microbiological contamination of ready-to-eat food by food preparation workers and the effectiveness of interventions to minimize those risks. Available at: http://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodSafety/RetailFoodProtection/ucm210138.htm. Accessed 25 March 2010.
14. Haas, C. N., J. R. Marie, J. B. Rose, and C. P. Gerba. 2005. Assessment of benefits from use of antimicrobial hand products: reduction in risk from handling ground beef. *Int. J. Hyg. Environ. Health* 208:461–466.
15. Hoffmann, S., P. Fischbeck, A. Krupnick, and M. McWilliams. 2007. Using expert elicitation to link foodborne illnesses in the United States to foods. *J. Food Prot.* 70:1220–1229.
16. Hugonnet, S., T. V. Perneger, and D. Pittet. 2002. Alcohol-based handrub improves compliance with hand hygiene in intensive care units. *Arch. Intern. Med.* 162:1037–1043.
17. Larson, E., and L. Bobo. 1992. Effective hand degerming in the presence of blood. *J. Emerg. Med.* 10:7–11.
18. Luby, S. P., M. Agboatwalla, J. Painter, A. Altaf, W. L. Billhimer, and R. M. Hoekstra. 2004. Effect of intensive handwashing promotion on childhood diarrhea in high-risk communities in Pakistan: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA (J. Am. Med. Assoc.)* 291:2547–2554.
19. Lues, J., and I. Van Tonder. 2007. The occurrence of indicator bacteria on hands and aprons of food handlers in the delicatessen sections of a retail group. *Food Control* 18:326–332.
20. Michaels, B., C. Keller, M. Blevins, G. Paoli, T. Ruthman, E. Todd, and C. Griffith. 2004. Prevention of food worker transmission of foodborne pathogens: risk assessment and evaluation of effective hygiene intervention strategies. *Food Serv. Technol.* 4:31–49.
21. Montville, R., Y. Chen, and D. W. Schaffner. 2002. Risk assessment of hand washing efficacy using literature and experimental data. *Int. J. Food Microbiol.* 73:305–313.
22. Paulson, D. 1999. A suggested method for evaluating foodhandler/processor handwash formulations. *Dairy Food Environ. Sanit.* 19: 546–550.
23. Paulson, D., C. Riccardi, C. Beausoleil, E. Fendler, M. Dolan, L. Dunkerton, and R. Williams. 1999. Efficacy evaluation of four hand cleansing regimens for food handlers. *Dairy Food Environ. Sanit.* 19: 680–684.
24. Schaffner, D. W., and K. M. Schaffner. 2007. Management of risk of microbial cross-contamination from uncooked frozen hamburgers by alcohol-based hand sanitizer. *J. Food Prot.* 70:109–113.
25. Todd, E. C. D., J. D. Greig, C. A. Bartleson, and B. S. Michaels. 2007. Outbreaks where food workers have been implicated in the spread of foodborne disease. Part 2. Description of outbreaks by size, severity, and settings. *J. Food Prot.* 70:1975–1993.
26. Todd, E. C. D., J. D. Greig, C. A. Bartleson, and B. S. Michaels. 2007. Outbreaks where food workers have been implicated in the spread of foodborne disease. Part 3. Factors contributing to outbreaks and description of outbreak categories. *J. Food Prot.* 70:2199–2217.
27. Todd, E. C. D., J. D. Greig, C. A. Bartleson, and B. S. Michaels. 2008. Outbreaks where food workers have been implicated in the spread of foodborne disease. Part 5. Sources of contamination and pathogen excretion from infected persons. *J. Food Prot* 71:2582–2595.
28. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. 1994. Tentative final monograph for health-care antiseptic drug products: proposed rule. *Fed. Regist.* 59:31441–31452.
29. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. 2004. FDA report on the occurrence of foodborne illness risk factors in selected institutional foodservice, restaurant, and retail food store facility types. Available at: http://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodSafety/RetailFoodProtection/FoodborneIllnessandRiskFactorReduction/RetailFoodRiskFactorStudies/ucm089696.htm#execsum. Accessed 25 March 2010.
30. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. 2009. Food Code 2009. Available at: http://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodSafety/RetailFoodProtection/FoodCode/FoodCode2009/. Accessed 25 March 2010.
31. White, C., R. Kolble, R. Carlson, N. Lipson, M. Dolan, Y. Ali, and M. Cline. 2003. The effect of hand hygiene on illness rate among students in university residence halls. *Am. J. Infect. Control* 31:364–370.

Journal of Food Protection



Hand Hygiene Regimens for the Reduction of Risk in Food Service Environments

SARAH L. EDMONDS,[1]* ROBERT R. McCORMACK,[2] SIFANG STEVE ZHOU,[3] DAVID R. MACINGA,[1] AND CHRISTOPHER M. FRICKER[1]

[1]*GOJO Industries, Inc., One GOJO Plaza, Suite 500, Akron, Ohio 44311;* [2]*BioScience Laboratories, Inc., 300 North Willson, Suite 1, Bozeman, Montana 59771; and* [3]*MICROBIOTEST, Microbac Laboratories, Inc., 105B Carpenter Drive, Sterling, Virginia 20164, USA*

Journal of Food Protection, Vol. 75, No. 7, 2012, Pages 1303–1309
doi:10.4315/0362-028X.JFP-11-449
Copyright ©, International Association for Food Protection

Hand Hygiene Regimens for the Reduction of Risk in Food Service Environments

SARAH L. EDMONDS,[1]* ROBERT R. McCORMACK,[2] SIFANG STEVE ZHOU,[3] DAVID R. MACINGA,[1] AND CHRISTOPHER M. FRICKER[1]

[1]*GOJO Industries, Inc., One GOJO Plaza, Suite 500, Akron, Ohio 44311;* [2]*BioScience Laboratories, Inc., 300 North Willson, Suite 1, Bozeman, Montana 59771; and* [3]*MICROBIOTEST, Microbac Laboratories, Inc., 105B Carpenter Drive, Sterling, Virginia 20164, USA*

MS 11-449: Received 3 October 2011/Accepted 17 January 2012

ABSTRACT

Pathogenic strains of *Escherichia coli* and human norovirus are the main etiologic agents of foodborne illness resulting from inadequate hand hygiene practices by food service workers. This study was conducted to evaluate the antibacterial and antiviral efficacy of various hand hygiene product regimens under different soil conditions representative of those in food service settings and assess the impact of product formulation on this efficacy. On hands contaminated with chicken broth containing *E. coli,* representing a moderate soil load, a regimen combining an antimicrobial hand washing product with a 70% ethanol advanced formula (EtOH AF) gel achieved a 5.22-log reduction, whereas a nonantimicrobial hand washing product alone achieved a 3.10-log reduction. When hands were heavily soiled from handling ground beef containing *E. coli,* a wash-sanitize regimen with a 0.5% chloroxylenol antimicrobial hand washing product and the 70% EtOH AF gel achieved a 4.60-log reduction, whereas a wash-sanitize regimen with a 62% EtOH foam achieved a 4.11-log reduction. Sanitizing with the 70% EtOH AF gel alone was more effective than hand washing with a nonantimicrobial product for reducing murine norovirus (MNV), a surrogate for human norovirus, with 2.60- and 1.79-log reductions, respectively. When combined with hand washing, the 70% EtOH AF gel produced a 3.19-log reduction against MNV. A regimen using the SaniTwice protocol with the 70% EtOH AF gel produced a 4.04-log reduction against MNV. These data suggest that although the process of hand washing helped to remove pathogens from the hands, use of a wash-sanitize regimen was even more effective for reducing organisms. Use of a high-efficacy sanitizer as part of a wash-sanitize regimen further increased the efficacy of the regimen. The use of a well-formulated alcohol-based hand rub as part of a wash-sanitize regimen should be considered as a means to reduce risk of infection transmission in food service facilities.

Foodborne diseases are a serious and growing public health concern both in the United States *(8, 19)* and worldwide *(46)*. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention attributed 9.4 million illnesses, nearly 56,000 hospitalizations, and more than 1,300 deaths to foodborne pathogens annually in the United States *(33)*. Many researchers believe that foodborne diseases are underreported *(27, 39, 43)*.

The ever-changing nature of pathogens, including the emergence of new ones, is contributing to an increase in foodborne diseases *(5)*. Enterotoxigenic *Escherichia coli* has been implicated in one of the largest foodborne outbreaks reported in the United States to date *(3)*. According to the Foodborne Disease Outbreak Surveillance System (1998 to 2002), 31% of foodborne disease outbreaks and 41% of cases of infection with known etiology can be attributed to human norovirus (HNV) *(27),* and HNV is now recognized as the most significant cause of infectious gastrointestinal illnesses, with a growing number of virulent strains circulating *(4, 9, 16, 44)*.

Poor personal hygiene of food service workers, in particular improper hand washing, contributes significantly to the risk of foodborne diseases *(15, 17, 26, 38, 41)*. The majority of HNV infection outbreaks are attributed to contamination of food via unwashed or improperly washed hands of food handlers *(5, 9, 23)*. HNVs have a low infective dose *(37, 44),* persist in the environment, and are resistant to chlorination and freezing *(23, 35, 44)*. These factors contribute to an increased risk of HNV illness transmission. Heavily soiled items are frequently encountered in food service settings when preparing food, and antimicrobial agents are considered to be less effective in the presence of such items *(6)*. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) Food Code requires that food service workers wash their hands with a cleaning compound and water before using alcohol-based hand rubs (ABHRs) *(42)*. Although an improvement in compliance among food handlers with personal hygiene risk factors was observed between 1998 and 2008 in retail food facilities, hand washing practices were the most out-of-compliance risk factor for every type of facility evaluated *(40)*. In 2008, hand washing practices were not being followed in 76% of restaurants and approximately 50% of delicatessens *(40)*. In another study, compliance with Food Code recommendations for frequency of washing during production, service, and cleaning phases in restaurants was only 5% *(36)*.

* Author for correspondence. Tel: 330-255-6745; Fax: 330-255-6083; E-mail: edmondss@gojo.com.

TABLE 1. *Test products*

Test product	Description	Abbreviation
GOJO Luxury Foam Handwash	Nonantimicrobial hand washing product	Nonantimicrobial hand wash
MICRELL Antibacterial Foam Handwash	0.5% Chloroxylenol hand washing product	PCMX hand wash
GOJO Antibacterial Plum Foam Handwash	0.3% Triclosan hand washing product	Triclosan hand wash
PURELL Instant Hand Sanitizer Foam	62% Ethanol foam ABHR	62% EtOH foam
PURELL Instant Hand Sanitizer Advanced Formula VF481	70% Ethanol gel ABHR	70% EtOH gel

Various hand hygiene regimens reduce the risk of transmission of pathogens from the hands of food service workers to the food they handle and prepare *(10, 29, 30)*. Proper hand hygiene has been associated with reductions of gastrointestinal illness ranging from 42 to 57% *(5, 11, 25)*. However, some interventions are more effective for removing pathogens than are others. Hand washing with soap and water was more effective for reducing contamination on the hands than was rinsing with water or not washing at all *(7, 10)*. Antimicrobial agents are more effective for removing bacteria on hands than is nonantimicrobial soap *(13, 30)*. Even ABHRs used alone decontaminate hands at least as effectively as does washing with soap and water *(12, 34)*. However, the combination of hand washing followed by the use of ABHRs produces even greater reduction of bacteria on hands *(18, 29, 30, 32)*. When water is unavailable, a two-stage hand cleansing protocol using an ABHR known as the SaniTwice method (a registered trademark, James Mann, Handwashing for Life, Libertyville, IL) was at least as effective for removing bacteria from the hands as was only washing with soap and water *(12)*.

A critical need remains for hand hygiene products with increased efficacy against hard-to-kill pathogens. Typical ABHR activity against nonenveloped enteric viruses varies depending on the type and concentration of alcohol *(5, 6, 14, 21)*. Different strains of HNVs may be more resistant to antimicrobial agents than others *(24)*. Several studies have been conducted on newly formulated ABHRs with significantly improved inactivation of nonenveloped viruses *(24, 28)*. A 70% ethanol advanced formula (EtOH AF) gel reduced HNV by 3.74 log units in 15 s, a significantly greater HNV reduction than produced by six other commercially available hand hygiene products *(24)*. This gel was the most effective product tested against two strains of HNV.

Quantitative data are scarce on the relative health impact of different hygiene interventions *(5)*, in particular hand hygiene product performance against organisms commonly found in food service facilities, i.e., in food soils. This series of studies was designed to determine the antimicrobial effectiveness of various hand hygiene product regimens under moderate and heavy food soil conditions and against the murine norovirus (MNV), a surrogate for HNV. The impact of specific product formulation on antimicrobial efficacy also was evaluated.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Test products. The test products, which were manufactured by GOJO Industries (Akron, OH), are described in Table 1.

Product application. Table 2 shows the stepwise product application procedures for all test methods.

Participants. The study participants were healthy adults with two hands and were free of dermal allergies or any skin disorders on the hands or forearms. These studies were conducted in compliance with good clinical practice and good laboratory practice regulations and approved by local institutional review boards. All participants provided written informed consent.

Overall design for antibacterial efficacy studies. The purpose of the studies was to determine the antibacterial efficacy of various blinded test product configurations versus a relevant foodborne pathogen presented under conditions of moderate or heavy food soil. The order of use of each product configuration was determined randomly. All testing of antibacterial efficacy was performed using a modification of the ASTM International E1174-06 method *(1)*. For both the moderate and heavy soil tests, a two-step testing sequence was used for all products. For the moderate and heavy soil tests 18 and 12 participants, respectively, tested each configuration. Each participant completed a baseline cycle, in which hands were contaminated with *E. coli* (ATCC 11229) in moderate soil (chicken broth) for the first study and in heavy soil (sterile ground beef *(31)*) in the second study. Samples were collected for baseline bacterial counts. After the baseline sampling, participants completed a 30-s nonmedicated soap wash followed by the product evaluation cycle, which consisted of a contamination procedure, application of the test product, and subsequent hand sampling. Baseline and postapplication samples were evaluated for the presence of *E. coli*. Each participant was used for only one test configuration and, on completion of testing, decontaminated their hands with a 1-min 70% EtOH rinse, air drying, and a 30-s nonmedicated soap wash.

Preparation of inoculum. A 2-liter flask was filled with 1,000 ml of tryptic soy broth, i.e., 30.0 g of dehydrated tryptic soy broth medium (BD, Franklin Lakes, NJ) added to 1 liter of deionized water, heated, and sterilized (final pH 7.3 $\pm$ 0.20). The broth was inoculated with 1.0 ml of a 24-h culture of *E. coli* grown from a cryogenic stock culture. The flask was incubated for 24 h, and the suspension was used for the contamination challenge.

Hand contamination procedures. For the moderate soil study, a 24-h culture of *E. coli* was suspended in commercially available chicken broth (Swanson chicken broth, Campbell Soup Company, Camden, NJ) to a final concentration of 1×10^9 CFU/ml. Three aliquots of 1.5, 1.5, and 2 ml were transferred into each participant's cupped hands. Taking care not to drip the suspension, each aliquot was distributed over the front and back surfaces of the hands up to the wrists for 20 s; hands were air dried for 30 s after the first and second aliquots and for 90 s after the third aliquot. After samples were collected from the hands for baseline bacterial counts, the hands were washed for 30 s with a

TABLE 2. *Test product application procedures*[a]

Step	Wash	Sanitize	Wash-sanitize regimen	SaniTwice regimen[b]
1	Wet hands with water at 40°C	Dispense 1.5 ml of product into cupped hands	Wet hands with water at 40°C	Dispense 3 ml of sanitizer into cupped hands
2	Apply 1.5 ml of product	Rub hands together until dry	Apply 1.5 ml of product	Rub vigorously over hands for 15 s to simulate washing
3	Lather for 30 s		Lather for 30 s	Clean thoroughly with two paper towels
4	Rinse with water for 30 s		Rinse with water for 30 s	Dispense additional 1.5 ml of product
5	Pat dry with two paper towels		Pat dry with two paper towels	Rub hands together until dry
6			Apply 1.5 ml of sanitizer to hands	
7			Rub until dry	

[a] All application procedures were initiated within 10 s of completing the 90-s drying step.
[b] SaniTwice is a registered trademark with James Mann (Handwashing for Life, Libertyville, IL).

nonmedicated soap, and a second cycle of contamination was performed. After the 90-s drying step, participants applied the randomly assigned test product.

For the heavy soil study, 5.0-ml aliquots of the challenge suspension of *E. coli* was transferred to 4-oz (113-g) portions of sterile 90% lean ground beef and distributed evenly with gloved hands to achieve contaminant levels of approximately 5.0×10^8 CFU per portion. Each participant then kneaded the inoculated raw hamburger for 2 min. Hands were air dried for 90 s and then sampled for baseline counts. After a 30-s decontamination with nonmedicated soap, the cycle was repeated, and the test product was applied.

Bacterial recovery and microbial enumeration. Within 5 min after contamination for baseline evaluation and after product application, oversized powder-free sterile latex gloves were placed on each participant's hands, and 75 ml of sterile stripping fluid (0.4 g of KH_2PO_4, 10.1 g of Na_2HPO_4, and 1.0 g of isooctylphenoxypolyethoxyethanol in 1 liter of distilled water, pH adjusted to 7.8) was transferred into each glove. After a 60-s massage of the hands through the gloves, a 5.0-ml sample of the rinsate was removed from the glove and diluted in 5.0 ml of Butterfield's phosphate buffer solution with product neutralizers. Each aliquot was serially diluted in neutralizing solution, and appropriate dilutions were plated in duplicate onto MacConkey agar plates (50.0 g of dehydrated medium [BD] added to 1 liter of deionized water, heated, and sterilized; final pH 7.1 $\pm$ 0.2) and incubated for 24 to 48 h at 30°C. Colonies were counted and recorded using the computerized Q-Count plate-counting systems (Advanced Instruments, Inc., Norwood, MA).

Data analysis and statistical considerations. The estimated log-transformed number of viable microorganisms recovered from each hand (the R value) was determined using the formula $R = \log(75 \times C_i \times 10^D \times 2)$, where 75 is the volume (in milliliters) of stripping solution instilled into each glove, C_i is the arithmetic average colony count of the two plate at a particular dilution, D is the dilution factor, and 2 is the neutralization dilution.

Descriptive statistics and confidence intervals were calculated using the 0.05 level of significance for type I (alpha) error. Statistical calculations of means and standard deviations were generated on the log recovery data from baseline samples, post–product application samples, and the log differences between baseline and post–product application samples. Product comparisons were made using a one-way analysis of variance with post hoc analysis (Bonferroni's multiple comparison test) at $\alpha = 0.05$.

Overall design for HNV study. The purpose of the HNV study was to determine the virucidal activity of various hand hygiene regimens against HNV. Because routine culture and infectivity assays of HNV are not possible, HNV surrogates are routinely used to evaluate the virucidal activity of disinfectants and antiseptics. MNV, which is a suitable surrogate for HNV *(45),* was used in this study. A modification of ASTM International E2011-09 method for evaluating hygienic hand wash formulations for virus-eliminating activity using the entire hand *(2)* was utilized in this study. The modification involved the use of the glove rinsate sampling method and a randomized cross-over design. A total of six participants completed testing on all of the products.

Virus inoculum. Strain MNV-G (Yale University, New Haven, CT) was confirmed by direct serial dilution and inoculation onto host cells. Virus stocks were stored in an ultracold freezer (≤ -60°C). Frozen viral stocks were thawed on the day of test. The

TABLE 3. E. coli *recovery and reductions in the presence of moderate food soil load*

Application procedure	Test products	Mean ± SD *E. coli* (log CFU/ml)		Statistical analysis[a]			
		Baseline recovery	Reduction				
Wash	Nonantimicrobial hand wash	8.58 ± 0.46	3.10 ± 0.61	A			
Wash	PCMX hand wash	8.62 ± 0.65	3.56 ± 0.74	A	B		
Wash-sanitize	Nonantimicrobial hand wash + 62% EtOH foam	8.32 ± 0.64	3.81 ± 0.89		B	C	
Wash-sanitize	PCMX hand wash + 62% EtOH foam	8.25 ± 0.45	4.16 ± 0.91			C	
Wash-sanitize	Nonantimicrobial hand wash + 70% EtOH AF gel	8.49 ± 0.42	5.13 ± 0.71				D
Wash-sanitize	PCMX hand wash + 70% EtOH AF gel	8.57 ± 0.53	5.22 ± 0.60				D

[a] Configurations with the same letter are statistically equivalent, and configurations with different letters are statistically different, with each letter increase (B through D) indicating that a configuration had a significantly higher log reduction.

titer of the stock virus was at least 1×10^7 $TCID_{50}$ (median tissue culture infective dose) per ml. The organic soil concentration was adjusted to at least 5% fetal bovine serum of the volume of the viral suspension.

Hand contamination procedures. Before viral contamination, participants washed their hands with nonmedicated soap for 1 min, rinsed their hands, and dried their hands with sterile paper towels. Each participant's hands were then submerged to the wrists in a solution of 70% EtOH for 10 s. The solution was distributed over the entire front and back surfaces of the hands up to the wrists for 90 s and allowed to air dry until evaporation was complete. The alcohol submersion procedure was then repeated. The participants' hands were rinsed with approximately 200 ml of deionized water and dried with an air blower. After their hands were dry, participants waited at least 20 min until the next round of viral contamination and treatment. Each participant's hands were contaminated with 1.5 ml of MNV. The virus was rubbed over the entire surface of both hands for 90 s, not reaching above the wrists. The hands were dried for approximately 90 s. For the baseline control, samples for virus recovery were collected immediately after drying. A decontamination procedure was completed after the baseline sample collection, and a randomly assigned product regimen was applied. The decontamination procedure was repeated after all subsequent treatment rounds. Samples were collected from the participants' hands, and the required controls were evaluated for the amount of MNV capable of replicating in cell culture.

Elution of virus. Within 5 min after each treatment regimen, loose-fitting powder-free sterile latex gloves were placed on each participant's hands, and 40 ml of recovery medium was transferred into each glove. After a 60-s massage of the hands through the gloves, the rinsate was transferred from the glove to a sterile tube, vortexed, and serially diluted in cell culture medium. Appropriate dilutions were inoculated onto the host cell culture (RAW 264.7, ATCC TIB-71) and absorbed for 20 to 30 h at 36 ± 2°C with 5% ± 1% CO_2. The cultures were incubated for another 3 to 6 days at 36 ± 2°C with 5% ± 1% CO_2 to allow for the development of viral infection.

Calculation of virus titer and reduction. The host cells were examined microscopically for the presence of infectious virions. The resulting virus-specific cytopathic effects (CPE) and test agent–specific cytotoxic effects were scored by examining both test samples and controls. The presence of residual infectious virions was scored based on virus-induced CPE. The $TCID_{50}$ per milliliter was determined using the Spearman-Karber method *(22)*. When a sample contained no detectable virus, a statistical analysis was performed based on the Poisson distribution *(20)* to determine the theoretical maximum possible titer for that sample. The log viral reduction value was calculated by subtracting the log virus units of the treatment regimen samples from the log baseline units. Descriptive statistics and confidence intervals were calculated ($\alpha = 0.05$). Statistical calculations of means and standard deviations were generated on the log recovery data from baseline samples, post–product application samples, and the log differences between baseline and post–product application samples. Test configuration comparisons were made using a one-way analysis of variance with post hoc analysis (Bonferroni's multiple comparison test) at $\alpha = 0.05$.

RESULTS

Reduction in microbial contamination of moderately soiled hands. Reductions of *E. coli* on moderately soiled hands (chicken broth) ranged from 3.10 log CFU/ml for the nonantimicrobial hand wash to 5.22 log CFU/ml for the wash-sanitize regimen with the 0.5% chloroxylenol (PCMX) hand wash and the 70% EtOH AF gel (Table 3). Although the differences were not significant, the PCMX hand wash achieved higher log reductions than did the nonantimicrobial hand wash for all regimens tested. Regimens including the 70% EtOH AF gel were superior to all other configurations ($P < 0.001$). The reductions for the majority of subjects were at the limit of detection (complete kill) for both regimens that included the 70% EtOH AF gel; therefore, these reductions may actually be underestimated. Overall, the wash-sanitize regimen was significantly superior to hand washing alone with one exception. The PCMX hand wash alone was equivalent in efficacy to the nonantimicrobial hand wash followed by the 62% EtOH foam.

Reduction in microbial contamination of heavily soiled hands. The four product configurations tested under conditions of heavy soil load produced *E. coli* log reductions ranging from 3.97 to 4.60 log CFU/ml (Table 4). The antimicrobial agent in the hand washing product did not impact efficacy of the regimen; the reductions produced by the same sanitizer used in combination with the 0.3% triclosan hand wash or the PCMX hand wash were equivalent. However, the choice of sanitizer did have a significant impact on efficacy. All configurations that included the 70% EtOH AF gel were superior in

TABLE 4. E. coli *recovery and reductions in the presence of heavy food soil load*

Application procedure	Test products	Mean ± SD *E. coli* (log CFU/ml)		Statistical analysis[a]
		Baseline recovery	Reduction	
Wash-sanitize	PCMX hand wash + 62% EtOH foam	7.50 ± 0.19	4.11 ± 0.48	A
Wash-sanitize	Triclosan hand wash + 62% EtOH foam	7.54 ± 0.18	3.97 ± 0.45	A
Wash-sanitize	PCMX hand wash + 70% EtOH AF gel	7.53 ± 0.19	4.60 ± 0.52	B
Wash-sanitize	Triclosan hand wash + 70% EtOH AF gel	7.46 ± 0.19	4.51 ± 0.43	B

[a] Configurations with the same letter are statistically equivalent, and configurations with different letters are statistically different, with a letter increase (B) indicating that a configuration had a significantly higher log reduction.

performance to configurations that included the 62% EtOH foam ($P < 0.05$).

Inactivation of MNV on soiled hands. A third study was conducted to evaluate four hand hygiene configurations against MNV, a surrogate for HNV. Hand washing with the nonantimicrobial hand wash was minimally effective against MNV, producing a <2-log reduction (Table 5). Sanitizing with the 70% EtOH AF gel was significantly more effective than hand washing for reducing MNV ($P < 0.01$). Using a wash-sanitize regimen was more effective than either hand washing or sanitizing alone ($P < 0.05$). The SaniTwice method with the 70% EtOH AF gel was the most effective regimen, achieving a >4-log reduction of MNV ($P < 0.01$).

DISCUSSION

Previous findings suggest that hand hygiene regimens reduce the risk of transmission of pathogens from the contaminated hands of food service workers to food *(10, 29, 30)*. The findings from our studies support and extend those from previous studies by demonstrating that hand hygiene regimens can be effective even in the presence of high organic loads and against nonenveloped viruses such as HNV.

These studies further demonstrate the improved effectiveness of wash-sanitize regimens over hand washing or sanitizing alone. In the presence of moderate food soil, the combination of the 70% EtOH AF gel with either a nonantimicrobial hand wash or an antimicrobial hand washing product each achieved >5-log reductions of *E. coli*. In contrast, hand washing achieved only a <3.6-log reduction. In the presence of heavy food soil, the use of 70% EtOH AF gel after the antimicrobial foam hand washing product in two different configurations achieved a 4.51-log reduction and a 4.60-log reduction, respectively. In the HNV study, hand washing alone produced a <2-log reduction. When used as part of a wash-sanitize regimen that included the 70% EtOH AF gel a 3.19-log reduction was achieved. These findings demonstrate that the addition of a high-efficacy sanitizer to a hand washing regimen results in a greater reduction of microorganisms. This finding is consistent with those of others, who reported that the primary factor influencing final microorganism levels on the hands is sanitizer use *(30)*.

The current FDA Food Code *(42)* allows use of ABHRs only on hands that have been cleaned according to the recommended hand washing protocol. The Food Code (section 2-301.16) also severely restricts hand sanitizers by allowing their use only after a proper hand washing or where no direct contact with food occurs. The SaniTwice regimen has previously been shown to be an effective means for the reduction of bacteria on the hands when soap and water are unavailable. In the MNV study, use of the SaniTwice protocol with the 70% EtOH AF gel achieved a >4-log (>99.99%) reduction of MNV and was the most effective regimen tested. This combination is significantly more effective than hand washing or sanitizing alone and more effective than a wash-sanitize regimen. Therefore, these data indicate that the SaniTwice regimen is an effective method for significantly reducing bacteria and nonenveloped viruses.

In the studies presented here, the configurations that included the 70% EtOH AF gel consistently provided superior performance. These findings are consistent with previous findings that the in vivo activity of ABHRs is not solely dependent upon alcohol concentration *(12, 24, 28)*. In a previous study, the 70% EtOH AF gel provided significantly greater HNV reduction than did other hand hygiene products that contained >85% ethanol *(24)*.

TABLE 5. *MNV recovery and reductions*

Application procedure	Test products	Mean ± SD MNV (log $TCID_{50}$/ml)		Statistical analysis[a]
		Baseline recovery	Reduction	
Wash	Nonantimicrobial hand wash	6.98 ± 0.20	1.79 ± 0.29	A
Sanitize	70% EtOH AF gel		2.60 ± 0.41	B
Wash-sanitize	Nonantimicrobial hand wash + 70% EtOH AF gel		3.19 ± 0.31	C
SaniTwice	70% EtOH AF gel		4.04 ± 0.33	D

[a] Configurations with the same letter are statistically equivalent, and configurations with different letters are statistically different, with each letter increase (B through D) indicating that a configuration had a significantly higher log reduction.

Similarly, an earlier version of the 70% EtOH AF gel was more effective than hand hygiene products containing 95% ethanol and 75% isopropanol *(28)*. Liu et al. *(24)* suggested that the additional ingredients in these novel ABHRs (a synergistic blend of polyquaternium polymer and organic acid) may work with the ethanol to denature the viral capsid protein. These comparisons demonstrate the importance of formulation in product efficacy.

As illustrated in the *E. coli* study with heavy food soil, the lower log reductions produced by the regimen including the PCMX hand wash with the 70% EtOH AF gel reflects the fact that the raw hamburger was a greater challenge than was the moderate soil (chicken broth). Despite this challenge, use of the 70% EtOH AF gel as part of the hand hygiene regimen probably would provide increased protection against the transmission of foodborne illness because it produced at least 0.5-log greater reductions than did washes paired with a typical hand sanitizer. A wash-sanitize regimen including a high-efficacy formulation should be used in high-risk environments in which uncooked meat is handled in the same vicinity as ready-to-eat foods.

A limitation of our study was that a surrogate virus, MNV, was utilized. Although MNV has been extensively studied and is considered an acceptable surrogate for HNV, the results obtained with this virus may not be an exact reflection of the actual efficacy of these products against various HNV strains. Future efforts should focus on developing routine and repeatable culture-based methods to quantify infectious HNV. Currently, clinical studies should focus on improving hand hygiene compliance by food handlers and on determining the effectiveness of hand hygiene regimens in food service settings.

This series of studies reveals that wash-sanitize regimens, particularly those including a well-formulated ABHR, can be highly efficacious, even in the presence of high organic loads and against HNV. Consequently, the inclusion of such formulations as part of a hand hygiene regimen could be a primary intervention for reducing the risk of infection transmission in food service facilities.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Ruth Carol assisted as a technical editor in the preparation of this manuscript.

REFERENCES

1. ASTM International. 2006. Standard test method for evaluation of the effectiveness of health care personnel handwash formulations. Designation E1174-06. ASTM International, West Conshohocken, PA.
2. ASTM International. 2009. Standard test method for evaluation of hygienic handwash and handrub formulations for virus-eliminating activity using the entire hand. Designation E2011-09. ASTM International, West Conshohocken, PA.
3. Beatty, M. E., P. M. Adcock, S. W. Smith, K. Quinlan, L. A. Kamimoto, S. Y. Rowe, K. Scott, C. Conover, T. Varchmin, C. A. Bopp, K. D. Greene, B. Bibb, L. Slutsker, and E. D. Mintz. 2006. Epidemic diarrhea due to enterotoxigenic *Escherichia coli*. *Clin. Infect. Dis.* 42:329–334.
4. Blanton, L. H., S. M. Adams, R. S. Beard, G. Wei, S. N. Bulens, M. A. Widdowson, R. I. Glass, and S. S. Monroe. 2006. Molecular and epidemiologic trends of caliciviruses associated with outbreaks of acute gastroenteritis in the United States, 2000–2004. *J. Infect. Dis.* 193:413–421.
5. Bloomfield, S., A. Aiello, B. Cookson, C. O'Boyle, and E. Larson. 2007. The effectiveness of hand hygiene procedures in reducing the risks of infections in home and community settings including handwashing and alcohol-based hand sanitizers. *Am. J. Infect. Control* 35:S27–S64.
6. Boyce, J. M., and D. Pittet. 2002. Guideline for hand hygiene in health-care settings; recommendations of the healthcare infection control practices advisory committee and the HICPAC/SHEA/APIC/IDSA hand hygiene task force. *Morb. Mortal Wkly. Rep.* 51: 1–45.
7. Burton, M., E. Cobb, P. Donachie, G. Judah, V. Curtis, and W. P. Schmidt. 2011. The effect of handwashing with water or soap on bacterial contamination of hands. *Int. J. Environ. Res. Public Health* 8:97–104.
8. Buzby, J. C., and T. Roberts. 2009. Economic costs and trade impacts of microbial foodborne illness. *World Health Stat. Q.* 50:57–66.
9. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. 2010. Surveillance for foodborne disease outbreaks—United States, 2007. *Morb. Mortal. Wkly. Rep.* 59:973–979. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/mm5931a1.htm?s_cid=mm5931a1_w. Accessed 7 August 2011.
10. Courtenay, M., L. Ramirez, B. Cox, I. Han, X. Jiang, and P. Dawson. 2005. Effects of various hand hygiene regimes in removal and/or destruction of *Escherichia coli* on hands. *Food Serv. Technol.* 5:77–84.
11. Curtis, V., and S. Cairncross. 2003. Effect of washing hands with soap on diarrhea risk in the community: a systematic review. *Lancet Infect. Dis.* 3:275–281.
12. Edmonds, S. L., J. Mann, R. R. McCormack, D. R. Macinga, C. M. Fricker, J. W. Arbogast, and M. J. Dolan. 2010. SaniTwice: a novel approach to hand hygiene for reducing bacterial contamination on hands when soap and water are unavailable. *J. Food Prot.* 73:2296–2300.
13. Fuls, J. L., N. D. Rodgers, G. E. Fischler, J. M. Howard, M. Patel, P. L. Weidner, and M. H. Duran. 2008. Alternative hand contamination technique to compare the activities of antimicrobial and nonantimicrobial soaps under different test conditions. *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.* 74:3739–3744.
14. Gehrke, C., J. Steinmann, and P. Goroncy-Bermes. 2004. Inactivation of feline calicivirus, a surrogate of norovirus (formerly Norwalk-like viruses), by different types of alcohol in vitro and in vivo. *J. Hosp. Infect.* 56:49–55.
15. Green, L. R., V. Radke, R. Mason, L. Bushnell, D. W. Reimann, J. C. Mack, M. D. Motsinger, T. Stigger, and C. A. Selman. 2007. Factors related to food worker hand hygiene practices. *J. Food Prot.* 70:661–666.
16. Greig, J. D., E. C. D. Todd, C. A. Bartleson, and B. S. Michaels. 2007. Outbreaks where food workers have been implicated in the spread of foodborne disease. Part 1. Description of the problems, methods, and agents involved. *J. Food Prot.* 70:1752–1761.
17. Guzevich, J., and M. Ross. 1999. Evaluation of risks related to microbiological contamination of ready-to-eat food by food preparation workers and the effectiveness of interventions to minimize those risks. White paper. Available at: http://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodSafety/RetailFoodProtection/ucm210138.htm. Accessed 2 August 2011.
18. Haas, C. N., J. R. Marie, J. B. Rose, and C. P. Gerba. 2005. Assessment of benefits from use of antimicrobial hand products: reduction in risk from handling ground beef. *Int. J. Hyg. Environ. Health* 208:461–466.
19. Hoffmann, S., P. Fischbeck, A. Krupnick, and M. McWilliams. 2007. Using expert elicitation to link foodborne illnesses in the United States to foods. *J. Food Prot.* 70:1220–1229.
20. International Conference on Harmonisation of Technical Requirements for Registration of Pharmaceuticals for Human Use. 1999. Topic Q5A. Viral safety evaluation of biotechnology products derived from cell lines of human or animal origin, p. 24–25. International Conference on Harmonisation, Geneva.

21. Kampf, G., D. Grotheer, and J. Steinmann. 2005. Efficacy of three ethanol-based hand rubs against feline calicivirus, a surrogate virus for norovirus. *J. Hosp. Infect.* 60:144–149.
22. Karber, G. 1931. Beitrug zur kollektiven Behandlung pharmakologischer reihenversuche. *Arch. Exp. Pathol. Pharmakol.* 162:480–483.
23. Liu, P., Y. W. Chien, E. Papafragkou, H. M. Hsiao, L. A. Jaykus, and C. Moe. 2009. Persistence of human noroviruses on food preparation surfaces and human hands. *Food Environ. Virol.* 1:141–147.
24. Liu, P., D. R. Macinga, M. L. Fernandez, C. Zapka, H. M. Hsiao, B. Berger, J. W. Arbogast, and C. L. Moe. 2011. Comparison of the activity of alcohol-based handrubs against human noroviruses using the fingerpad method and quantitative real-time PCR. *Food Environ. Virol.* 3:35–42.
25. Luby, S. P., M. Agboatwalla, J. Painter, A. Altaf, W. L. Billhimer, and R. M. Hoekstra. 2004. Effect of intensive handwashing promotion on childhood diarrhea in high-risk communities in Pakistan: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA (J. Am. Med. Assoc.)* 291:2547–2554.
26. Lues, J., and I. Van Tonder. 2007. The occurrence of indicator bacteria on hands and aprons of food handlers in the delicatessen sections of a retail group. *Food Control* 18:326–332.
27. Lynch, M., J. Painter, R. Woodruff, and C. Braden. 2006. Surveillance for foodborne-disease outbreaks—United States, 1998–2002. *Morb. Mortal. Wkly. Rep. Surveill. Summ.* 55:1–41.
28. Macinga, D. R., S. A. Sattar, L. A. Jaykus, and J. W. Arbogast. 2008. Improved inactivation of nonenveloped enteric viruses and their surrogates by a novel alcohol-based hand sanitizer. *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.* 74:5047–5052.
29. Michaels, B., C. Keller, M. Blevins, G. Paoli, T. Ruthman, E. Todd, and C. J. Griffith. 2004. Prevention of food worker transmission of foodborne pathogens: risk assessment and evaluation of effective hygiene intervention strategies. *Food Serv. Technol.* 4:31–49.
30. Montville, R., Y. Chen, and D. W. Schaffner. 2002. Risk assessment of hand washing efficacy using literature and experimental data. *Int. J. Food Microbiol.* 73:305–313.
31. Paulson, D. 1999. A suggested method for evaluating food handler/processor handwash formulations. *Dairy Food Environ. Sanit.* 19: 546–550.
32. Paulson, D., C. Riccardi, C. Beausoleil, E. Fendler, M. Dolan, L. Dunkerton, and R. Williams. 1999. Efficacy evaluation of four hand cleansing regimens for food handlers. *Dairy Food Environ. Sanit.* 19: 680–684.
33. Scallan, E., R. M. Hoekstra, F. J. Angulo, R. V. Tauxe, M. A. Widdowson, S. L. Roy, J. L. Jones, and P. M. Griffin. 2011. Foodborne illness acquired in the United Sates—major pathogens. *Emerg. Infect. Dis.* 17:7–15.
34. Schaffner, D. W., and K. M. Schaffner. 2007. Management of risk of microbial cross-contamination from uncooked frozen hamburgers by alcohol-based hand sanitizer. *J. Food Prot.* 70:109–113.
35. Scott, E., and S. F. Bloomfield. 1990. The survival and transfer of microbial contamination via cloths, hands and utensils. *J. Appl. Bacteriol.* 68:271–278.
36. Strohbehn, C., J. Sneed, J. Paez, and J. Meyer. 2008. Hand washing frequencies and procedures used in retail food services. *J. Food Prot.* 71:1641–1650.
37. Teunis, P. F., C. L. Moe, P. Liu, S. E. Miller, L. Lindesmith, R. S. Baric, J. Le Pendu, and R. L. Calderon. 2008. Norwalk virus: how infectious is it? *J. Med. Virol.* 80:1468–1476.
38. Todd, E. C. D., J. D. Greig, C. A. Bartleson, and B. S. Michaels. 2008. Outbreaks where food workers have been implicated in the spread of foodborne disease. Part 5. Sources of contamination and pathogen excretion from infected persons. *J. Food Prot.* 71:2582–2595.
39. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. 2004. Healthy People 2010 progress review. 2004 challenges, barriers, strategies and opportunities. Available at: http://www.fda.gov/Food/ScienceResearch/ResearchAreas/HealthyPeople2010/ucm236488.htm#10-1. Accessed 2 August 2011.
40. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. 2008. FDA trend analysis report on the occurrence of foodborne illness risk factors in selected institutional foodservice, restaurant, and retail food store facility types. Available at: http://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodSafety/RetailFoodProtection/FoodborneIllnessandRiskFactorReduction/RetailFoodRiskFactorStudies/ucm223293.htm. Accessed 2 August 2011.
41. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. 2009. FDA report on the occurrence of foodborne illness risk factors in selected institutional foodservice, restaurant, and retail food store facility types. Available at: http://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodSafety/RetailFoodProtection/FoodborneIllnessandRiskFactorReduction/RetailFoodRiskFactorStudies/ucm224321.htm. Accessed 2 August 2011.
42. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. 2009. Food Code 2009. Available at: http://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodSafety/RetailFoodProtection/FoodCode/FoodCode2009. Accessed 2 August 2011.
43. Vivancos, R., A. Shroufi, M. Sillis, H. Aird, C. I. Gallimore, L. Myers, H. Maghoub, and P. Nair. 2009. Food-related norovirus outbreak among people attending two barbeques: epidemiological, virological, and environmental investigation. *Int. J. Infect. Dis.* 13: 629–635.
44. Widdowson, M. A., S. S. Monroe, and R. I. Glass. 2005. Are noroviruses emerging? *Emerg. Infect. Dis.* 11:735–737.
45. Wobus, C. E., L. B. Thackray, and H. W. Virgin. 2006. Murine norovirus: a model system to study norovirus biology and pathogenesis. *J. Virol.* 80:5104–5112. Available at: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC1472167/?tool=pubmed. Accessed 11 August 2011.
46. World Health Organization. 2010. Initiative to estimate the global burden of foodborne diseases. Available at: http://www.who.int/foodsafety/foodborne_disease/ferg/en/index.html. Accessed 3 August 2011.

Journal of Food Protection, Vol. 78, No. 11, 2015, Pages 2024–2032
doi:10.4315/0362-028X.JFP-15-102
Copyright ©, International Association for Food Protection

Ability of Hand Hygiene Interventions Using Alcohol-Based Hand Sanitizers and Soap To Reduce Microbial Load on Farmworker Hands Soiled during Harvest

ANNA FABISZEWSKI DE ACEITUNO,[1]* FAITH E. BARTZ,[1] DOMONIQUE WATSON HODGE,[1] DAVID J. SHUMAKER,[2] JAMES E. GRUBB,[2] JAMES W. ARBOGAST,[2] JORGE DÁVILA-AVIÑA,[3] FABIOLA VENEGAS,[3] NORMA HEREDIA,[3] SANTOS GARCÍA,[3] AND JUAN S. LEON[1]

[1]*Hubert Department of Global Health, Rollins School of Public Health, Emory University, Atlanta, Georgia 30322, USA;* [2]*GOJO Industries, Inc., Akron, Ohio 44311, USA; and* [3]*Departamento de Microbiología e Inmunología, Facultad de Ciencias Biológicas, Universidad Autónoma de Nuevo León, San Nicolás, Nuevo Leon 66451, México*

MS 15-102: Received 6 March 2015/Accepted 9 July 2015

ABSTRACT

Effective hand hygiene is essential to prevent the spread of pathogens on produce farms and reduce foodborne illness. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration Food Safety Modernization Act Proposed Rule for Produce Safety recommends the use of soap and running water for hand hygiene of produce handlers. The use of alcohol-based hand sanitizer (ABHS) may be an effective alternative hygiene intervention where access to water is limited. There are no published data on the efficacy of either soap or ABHS-based interventions to reduce microbial contamination in agricultural settings. The goal of this study was to assess the ability of two soap-based (traditional or pumice) and two ABHS-based (label-use or two-step) hygiene interventions to reduce microbes (coliforms, *Escherichia coli,* and *Enterococcus* spp.) and soil (absorbance of hand rinsate at 600 nm [A_{600}]) on farmworker hands after harvesting produce, compared with the results for a no-hand-hygiene control. With no hand hygiene, farmworker hands were soiled (median A_{600}, 0.48) and had high concentrations of coliforms (geometric mean, 3.4 log CFU per hand) and *Enterococcus* spp. (geometric mean, 5.3 log CFU per hand) after 1 to 2 h of harvesting tomatoes. Differences in microbial loads in comparison to the loads in the control group varied by indicator organism and hygiene intervention (0 to 2.3 log CFU per hand). All interventions yielded lower concentrations of *Enterococcus* spp. and *E. coli* ($P < 0.05$), but not of coliforms, than were found in the control group. The two-step ABHS intervention led to significantly lower concentrations of coliforms and *Enterococcus* spp. than the pumice soap and label-use ABHS interventions ($P < 0.05$) and was the only intervention to yield significantly fewer samples with *E. coli* than were found in the control group ($P < 0.05$). All interventions removed soil from hands ($P < 0.05$), soap-based interventions more so than ABHS-based interventions ($P < 0.05$). ABHS-based interventions were equally as effective as hand washing with soap at reducing indicator organisms on farmworker hands. Based on these results, ABHS is an efficacious hand hygiene solution for produce handlers, even on soiled hands.

Increases in produce-associated outbreaks highlight the need for effective microbial risk management on produce farms and in packing sheds. In the United States, from 1999 to 2008, contaminated produce was responsible for at least 23% of all reported foodborne illnesses *(33)*. Produce contamination may occur at various points in the farm-to-fork continuum *(19, 31)*. Some produce-associated outbreaks have been thought to be caused by infected farmworker and, possibly, inadequate hand hygiene *(14, 16, 42)*.

Farmworker hands may be vehicles for microbial contamination of produce *(23, 29)*. Harvest and packing, often done by hand, have been associated with increases in microbial contamination *(2, 18, 22)*. A 2010 study found that of seven major fruit and vegetable crops, all were either exclusively or partially harvested by hand *(7)*. Because "workers often touch produce with their bare hands" the U.S. Food and Drug Administration Food Safety Modernization Act (FSMA) Proposed Rule for Produce Safety states that hand washing is a "key control measure in preventing contamination" of produce *(39)*.

Effective hand hygiene reduces microbial risks and disease in health care and community settings *(1, 6, 43),* but there are few data on its efficacy in food handling settings *(4),* and it has just begun to be studied in the agricultural environment. The FSMA Proposed Rule for Produce Safety defines hand hygiene as "washing hands thoroughly, including scrubbing with soap and running water … and drying hands thoroughly using single-service towels, clean cloth towels, sanitary towel service or other adequate hand drying devices" *(39)*. However, soil on farmworker hands may limit the ability of hand washing to remove or inactivate microbes. Thus, it is important to assess the hypothesis that hand washing with soap is the most efficacious hygiene intervention for the agricultural envi-

* Author for correspondence. Tel: 404-712-8898; Fax: 404-712-8969; E-mail: anna.aceituno@emory.edu.

ronment. In addition, hand washing with soap may be difficult to achieve on every occasion specified in the rule due to barriers such as limited access to potable water near all work areas. Alcohol-based hand sanitizers (ABHS) are a logical alternative because they do not require potable water, and a large body of evidence exists to show that their antimicrobial efficacy results in reduced spread of infection in health care environments *(6, 43)*. The FSMA Proposed Rule for Produce Safety prohibits the sole use of ABHS because "the effectiveness of hand sanitizers has been shown to be highly dependent upon the removal of organic material from the hands prior to their use" *(39)*. However, a large body of research suggests that the efficacy of ABHS is not impacted when hands are soiled *(10, 12, 25, 26, 28, 30, 35)*. One limitation of ABHS is that hands may still appear dirty, even if microbes have been inactivated. One method that may address this limitation is SaniTwice, a two-step technique where an excess of ABHS is applied to hands and removed with paper towels, followed by a second ABHS application *(11)*. This technique has been shown to reduce *Escherichia coli* on hands soiled with beef broth and raw hamburgers *(11)* and to reduce bacteria and soil on agricultural workers' hands *(13)*.

The goal of this study was to assess the ability of two soap-based and two ABHS-based hygiene interventions to reduce microbes and soil on farmworker hands after harvesting produce, compared with a no-hygiene control. Traditional (nonantibacterial and nonabrasive) soap was included as the current "gold standard" *(38)*. Pumice soap was chosen because it may be able to remove particles and organic compounds from hands that traditional soaps do not. ABHS interventions were included as waterless hygiene options as alternatives to traditional soap. The two-step ABHS intervention was included because of its previously demonstrated efficacy on soiled hands *(10)*.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Setting and population. This study took place over a 4-week period in August and September 2014 on a farm that produces tomatoes in the state of Nuevo León, Mexico. The farm exported its produce to the United States and sold it to Mexican retailers and had established food safety protocols in place, as well as a dedicated food safety specialist on site. Approval for research on human subjects was conferred after ethics review by Emory University (institutional review board no. 00035460).

The study population consisted of 181 farmworkers who were employed by this farm to harvest tomatoes. Participants routinely used gloves for tomato harvest but removed them when participating in our study in order that the interventions be tested on the most highly soiled and microbially contaminated hands possible. During each of the five nonconsecutive days of the study prior to study enrollment, the farm food safety specialist introduced the study staff, who described the study and solicited volunteers. Inclusion criteria included that the participant was an employee of the farm assigned to harvest tomatoes and provided oral informed consent to participate in the study according to the institutional review board–approved protocol. There were no exclusion criteria. Oral consent was documented by study staff for each participant.

Farm activities and intervention groups. After consent was received, the farmworkers were randomly assigned to one of five groups (described below), and each was given a name tag to indicate his or her group and unique sample identifier. To standardize the microbial load on farmworker hands, all farmworkers were asked to wash their hands with traditional (nonantibacterial and nonabrasive) soap (~3.5 ml of Pearl Lotion Hand Soap; Noble Chemical, Inc., Lancaster, PA) and potable water at a nearby hand washing station stocked with paper towels for drying (Servitoalla double-ply, 28 by 22.8 cm; Pétalo, Kimberly-Clark, Mexico City, Mexico). All potable water used in the study was provided by the Universidad Autónoma de Nuevo León (UANL) laboratory and assured to have no coliforms, *E. coli,* or *Enterococcus* spp. in a 100-ml aliquot (see "Absorbance and microbial analyses" for general description of microbial assays). The farmworkers were then asked to harvest tomatoes for 1 to 2 h (collecting approximately 30 bins per person), using their standard procedure but without gloves. After harvesting, each farmworker completed activities described below based on their assigned group, following the instructions and demonstration of study staff (Fig. 1). A convenience sample of at least 10 participants per study group also had their hands photographed before and after the activities described below.

After harvesting, individuals in the control group did not perform any hand hygiene. Individuals in the label-use ABHS group used ABHS according to the product label instructions, with minor modifications. Individuals in this group received one pump of sanitizer gel (~3.5-ml of GOJO Purell Advanced Instant Hand Sanitizer, active ingredient 70% ethanol; GOJO Industries, Akron, OH) in the palm of one hand. They were then asked to rub their hands in the following manner used in all interventions: rub hands palm-to-palm, rub each palm on the dorsal surface of the opposite hand, and interlace fingers to distribute product over the fingers. They were asked to continue rubbing their hands until dry.

Individuals in the two-step ABHS group performed SaniTwice hand hygiene as described previously, with minor modifications *(11)*. Briefly, they received three pumps of sanitizer gel (~10.5 ml, enough to keep hands wet for 20 s) in the palm of one hand. They were then asked to rub their hands as described above for about 20 s. After ~20 s of rubbing, they were given a paper towel to remove all remaining sanitizer on their hands. They then followed the steps described above for the label-use ABHS group.

Individuals in the traditional soap group received two pumps of potable water (approximately 220 ml) to wet their hands. They then received one pump (~3.5 ml) of the same traditional soap used by all participants prior to harvesting. They were asked to rub their hands as described above for about 20 s. After rubbing, they rinsed their hands with three pumps of the potable water provided (approximately 330 ml). A paper towel was provided, and they were asked to dry their hands as they normally would.

Individuals in the pumice soap group received two pumps of pumice soap (~6 ml of GOJO Natural Orange Pumice Hand Cleaner, a gel-based surfactant formula with pumice particles; GOJO Industries) in the palm of one hand. They were then asked to rub their hands as described above for about 20 s. During this rubbing, they also received a splash of potable water (approximately 2 ml). After rubbing, they rinsed their hands with three pumps of the potable water provided (approximately 330 ml). A paper towel was provided, and they were asked to dry their hands as they normally would.

Immediately after the activities described above were completed, the farmworkers were asked to provide a hand rinsate sample by inserting one hand in a Whirl-Pak bag (Nasco, Fort Atkinson, WI) containing 750 ml of sterile 0.1% peptone water (Thermo Fisher Scientific, Waltham, MA) while study staff massaged their fingers through the bag for 20 to 30 s. This process

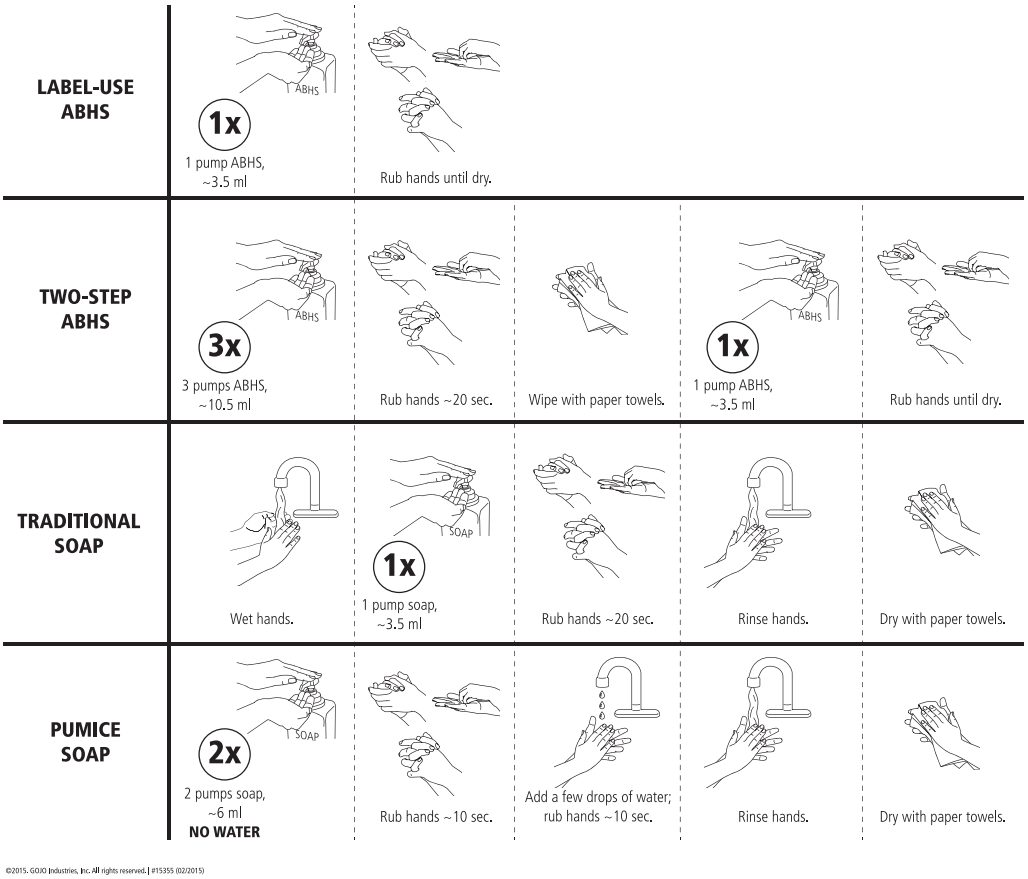


FIGURE 1. *Visual description of the two ABHS-based and two soap-based hand hygiene interventions. Illustrations in this figure are courtesy of GOJO Industries, Inc.*

was repeated for the second hand. The worker was provided a paper towel and small token of thanks for participation (e.g., bottled water, a cap, a bandana, or similar item). The labeled hand rinsate sample was stored on ice packs in a cooler. For each study staff member collecting samples, at the end of the day, an additional unopened Whirl-Pak bag containing 750 ml of peptone water was retained as a negative collection control. All samples were transported to the Laboratory of Microbial Biochemistry and Genetics at UANL, where they were stored at 4°C until analysis. Analysis was performed within 48 h of field collection. If the microbial analysis results were outside the quantifiable range and a repeat analysis was necessary, the repeat analysis was conducted within 72 h of field collection.

Absorbance and microbial analyses. Absorbance readings of hand rinsate at 600 nm (A_{600}) were taken to objectively measure the matter removed from hands during sampling, used as a proxy for "dirtiness of hands," referred to as "soil" herein. Absorbance reading is an objective approach to assessing dirt on hands that is comparable to assessing the turbidity of hand rinse samples *(27)* and may be preferable to other, subjective methods, such as visual inspection of hands *(25)*. Rinsate samples were inverted several times to resuspend any particulate matter, and then an aliquot was taken for measurement of absorbance at 600 nm (A_{600}) using a spectrophotometer (Sequoia Turner, Mountain View, CA).

Samples were analyzed in random order (without regard to study group) to detect and enumerate coliforms, *E. coli,* and *Enterococcus* spp., three common, nonpathogenic types of bacteria used to indicate microbial load, hereinafter called indicator bacteria. Serial volumes of each hand rinse sample (100 μl, 1 ml, and 10 ml) were filtered through separate 0.45-μm-pore-size cellulose filters (EMD Millipore Corporation, Billerica, MA) using a vacuum manifold filtration system (Pall Corporation, Port Washington, NY). When filtering volumes of less than 10 ml, the funnel (with the vacuum closed) was prefilled with 10 ml of peptone water before the sample was added to allow even sample dispersion across the membrane prior to opening the vacuum. Following filtration through duplicate membranes for each serial volume of rinsate, each membrane was placed on a separate petri dish containing solidified agar for bacterial enumeration. To enumerate *E. coli* and coliform bacteria, membranes were placed on chromogenic Bio-Rad Rapid'*E. coli* 2 agar (Bio-Rad, Hercules, CA) and incubated at 44°C for 24 h for enumeration of typical colonies (pink to purple for *E. coli* and both blue to green and pink to purple for coliforms). To enumerate *Enterococcus* bacteria, membranes were placed on Kenner Fecal *Streptococcus* agar (BD, Franklin Lake, NJ) plates and incubated at 37°C for 48 h before enumeration of red-centered colonies. For all three organisms, the limit of detection was 37 CFU per hand and the upper limit of quantification was 8.3 log CFU per hand.

The remaining sample rinsate was stored at 4°C for no more than 72 h postcollection and reprocessed, as described above, for cases in which colony counts were inconsistent or larger than assay detection limits (e.g., more than 250 colonies per plate). For each day of sample collection, study staff processed a negative sample collection control (described above), a negative water control (sampled from the municipal water used for hand rinsing in the field), and a positive control (mixture of *Enterococcus faecalis* [ATCC 19433], *Salmonella enterica* serovar Typhimurium [ATCC 19428] as a surrogate for coliforms *(15),* and *E. coli* [ATCC

TABLE 1. *Proportions of hand rinsate samples positive for indicator bacteria from the control group and four intervention groups of workers harvesting tomatoes on a farm in Mexico*

Group[a]	No. of positive samples/total no. of samples (%) tested for[b]:		
	Coliforms	*Enterococcus* spp.	*E. coli*
Control	30/42 (71)	41/42 (98)	10/42 (24)
Label-use ABHS	28/34 (82)	31/34 (91)	2/34 (6)
Two-step ABHS	21/35 (60)[c]	28/35 (80)	0/35 (0)[d]
Traditional soap	28/35 (80)	31/35 (89)	2/35 (6)
Pumice soap	35/35 (100)[d]	35/35 (100)	1/35 (3)

[a] The control group samples were collected after farmworkers harvested tomatoes for 1 to 2 h. Hand rinsate samples were collected from the four intervention groups immediately after performing hand hygiene.

[b] Values are for hand rinsate samples tested for the given indicator bacteria within each study group.

[c] Result is significantly different from the result for the pumice soap group ($\alpha = 0.05$)

[d] Result is significantly different from the result for the control group ($\alpha = 0.05$)

25922]; American Type Culture Collection, Manassas, VA). The positive control was created by growing each strain overnight on tryptic soy broth (Difco, BD) and then seeding 1 ml of each strain into 11 ml of sterile 0.85% NaCl (Sigma Aldrich, St. Louis, MO), pH 7.0.

Data entry and statistical analyses. All data were entered independently by two trained individuals into separate Microsoft Excel databases (Microsoft, Redmond, WA), compared, and reconciled by review of the original laboratory forms. An additional check showed no discrepancies when 5% of the original laboratory forms were randomly selected and compared against the final database. Statistical analyses were performed using Stata 10 (STATA Corp., College Station, TX), JMP Pro 10, and SAS 9.3 (SAS Institute Inc., Cary, NC). The Shapiro-Wilk test *(32)* indicated that all data (e.g., absorbance values of hand rinsates and log-transformed indicator organism concentrations) were not normally distributed (data not shown). Therefore, all statistical tests used were nonparametric. When calculating the concentrations of indicator bacteria, any sample without detectable bacteria was assigned a value of 18.5 CFU per hand, half the limit of detection *(37)*. Geometric means and standard deviations are used to describe bacterial concentrations as a convenience to the reader *(40),* and medians and standard deviations are used to describe absorbance data. To compare differences in percentages of samples positive for microbial indicators across study groups, a Pearson χ^2 test *(9)* and Bonferroni correction *(17)* were used. To compare A_{600} and microbial concentration values across study groups, the Kruskal-Wallis test *(20)* followed by the Steel-Dwass multiple comparison procedure *(8)* were used.

RESULTS

In general, farmworkers' hands became contaminated with indicator bacteria (Table 1 and Fig. 2, control) and soiled while they harvested produce, prior to hand hygiene (Fig. 3, control). The percentages of samples positive for coliforms (71%) and *Enterococcus* bacteria (98%) in the control group were high (Table 1) relative to the percentage of samples positive for *E. coli* (24%) (Table 1). The concentrations of bacteria on control group hands ranged widely: coliform concentrations in positive samples ranged from the lower limit of detection to the upper limit of quantification (37 CFU per hand to 8.3 log CFU per hand) (Fig. 2), *Enterococcus* concentrations in positive samples ranged from 93 CFU per hand to the upper limit of quantification (8.3 log CFU per hand) (Fig. 2), and *E. coli* concentrations in positive samples ranged from the lower limit of detection (37 CFU per hand) to 3.3 log CFU per hand. The geometric mean concentrations of coliforms (3.4 log CFU per hand) and *Enterococcus* bacteria (5.3 log CFU per hand) in control group samples were relatively high (Fig. 2) compared with the geometric mean concentration of *E. coli* bacteria (1.7 log or 50 CFU per hand) (Fig. 2). For microbial assays, all negative and positive controls consistently yielded the expected results. The median absorbance of control hand rinsate samples was 0.48, and the values varied greatly across the control group, ranging from A_{600} 0.05 to 1.36. The visual appearance of hands postharvest and preintervention is shown in the "before intervention" photographs of hands in Figure 4. It appears that in just a few hours of harvesting produce, the farmworkers' hands accumulated high concentrations of some indicator bacteria and soil.

While hygiene interventions did not completely eliminate indicator bacteria from hands, in general, all hand hygiene interventions effectively reduced the concentrations of some bacteria. However, there were differences in the performance of the four interventions tested.

Compared with the results for the control group, none of the hand hygiene interventions yielded a significantly lower coliform concentration or percentage of samples positive for coliforms (Table 1 and Fig. 2). However, the two-step ABHS group had lower concentrations of coliforms than the label-use ABHS and pumice soap groups ($P < 0.05$) (Fig. 2). Compared with the control group, all four intervention groups had lower concentrations of *Enterococcus* spp. ($P < 0.05$) (Fig. 2), although similar to the result for coliforms, none of the hand hygiene interventions yielded significantly lower percentages of samples positive for *Enterococcus* than in the control group (Table 1). The two-step ABHS group had lower concentrations of *Enterococcus* than the label-use ABHS and pumice soap groups ($P < 0.05$) (Fig. 2). For *E. coli*, all four hand hygiene interventions yielded significantly lower concentrations on hands than were found in the control group ($P < 0.05$, Fig. 2). However, two-step ABHS was the only intervention to have significantly fewer samples with detectable *E. coli* than the control group, and this group had no samples positive for *E. coli* ($P < 0.05$) (Table 1). The other three interventions had only 1 or 2 samples positive for *E. coli* (3 to 6%), compared with 10 samples positive for *E. coli* (24%) in the control group (Table 1), but these differences did not reach statistical significance.

Using absorbance measurements of hand rinsate samples as a proxy for soil, all four interventions yielded significantly less soil on hands than in the control group (range, A_{600} 0.05 to 1.36); soap-based interventions (range, A_{600} 0.00 to 0.15) yielded significantly less soil remaining

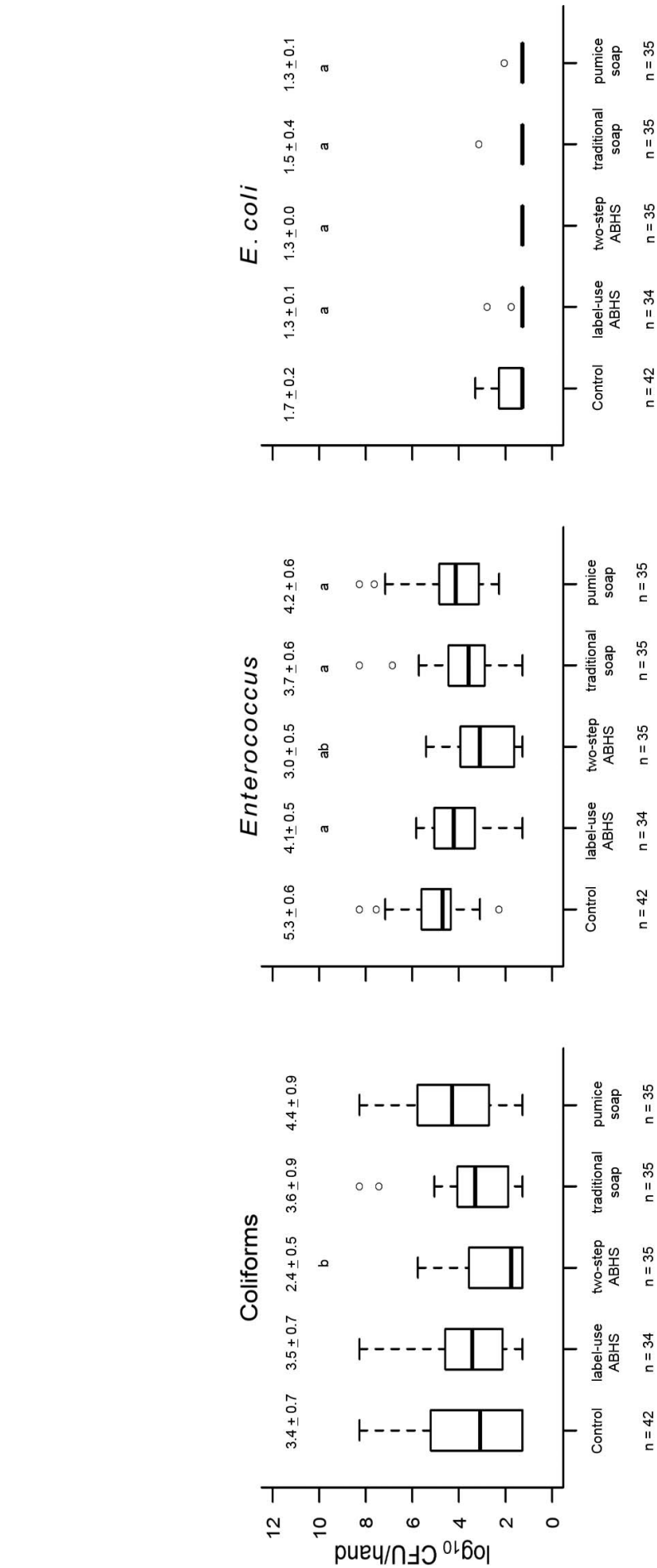


FIGURE 2. *Concentrations of coliform,* Enterococcus, *and* E. coli *bacteria in hand rinsate samples from the control group and four hand hygiene intervention groups of workers harvesting tomatoes. For each study group, the boxes display the quartiles (25th, 50th, and 75th) and whiskers extend to 1.5 times the interquartile range. Any data points outside the whiskers are displayed individually as dots. The values above each study group box plot indicate the geometric mean bacterial concentration and standard deviation (log CFU per hand). The control group samples were collected after farmworkers harvested tomatoes for 1 to 2 h. The four intervention groups had hand rinsates collected immediately after performing hand hygiene. a, significantly different from the control group (α = 0.05); b, significantly different from the label-use ABHS and pumice soap groups (α = 0.05)*

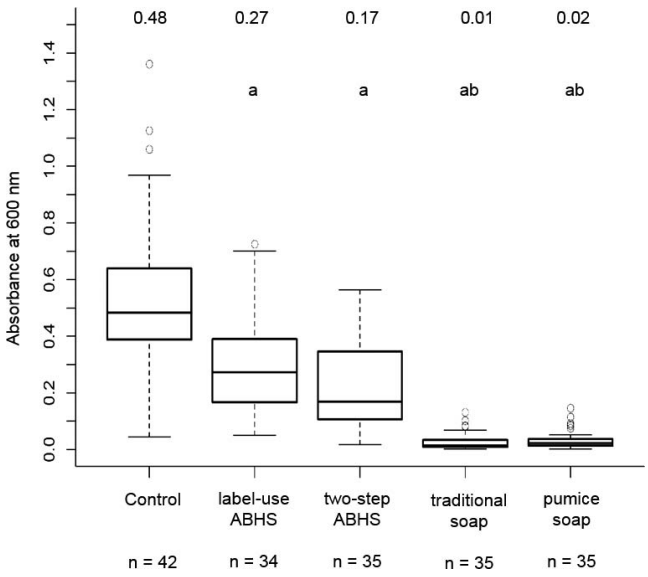


FIGURE 3. *Absorbance (at 600 nm) in hand rinsate samples from the control group and four intervention groups of workers harvesting tomatoes. For each study group, the boxes display the quartiles (25th, 50th, and 75th) and whiskers extend to 1.5 times the interquartile range. Any data points outside the whiskers are displayed individually as dots. The value above each study group box plot indicates the median absorbance (A_{600}). The control group samples were collected after farmworkers harvested tomatoes for 1 to 2 h. The four intervention groups had hand rinsates collected immediately after performing hand hygiene. a, significantly different from the control group ($\alpha = 0.05$); b, significantly different from the label-use ABHS and two-step ABHS groups ($\alpha = 0.05$)*

on hands than ABHS-based interventions (range, A_{600} 0.02 to 0.73) ($P < 0.05$) (Fig. 3). These absorbance results confirm the trends seen in the "after intervention" photographs taken of hands (Fig. 4).

DISCUSSION

The goal of this study was to assess the ability of two soap-based (traditional or pumice) and two ABHS-based (label-use or two-step) hygiene interventions, compared with a no-hand-hygiene control, to reduce microbes (coliforms, *E. coli,* and *Enterococcus*) and soil (A_{600} of hand rinsate) on farmworker hands after harvesting produce. Without intervention, farmworkers' hands were contaminated with high concentrations of indicator bacteria and were heavily soiled after 1 to 2 h of harvesting tomatoes. All four hygiene intervention groups had lower concentrations of *Enterococcus* and *E. coli* on their hands than the control group. Furthermore, all four interventions yielded significantly less soil remaining on hands, soap-based interventions more so than ABHS-based interventions. Based on these results, ABHS can be viewed as a promising hand hygiene solution for produce handlers, even on soiled hands. To build on these findings, future studies could investigate the efficacy of ABHS for pathogen inactivation on soiled hands in a controlled setting (e.g., an experimental greenhouse).

Farmworkers' hands were heavily soiled and contaminated with high concentrations of indicator bacteria after 1 to 2 h of harvesting tomatoes. The control group results are supported by our previous field observational study of microbial contamination of produce, environmental samples, and farmworkers' hands *(23),* where we found that 16 to 41% of farmworkers' hands had detectable *E. coli,* 92 to 100% had detectable coliforms, and 70 to 99% had detectable *Enterococcus* bacteria, depending on the type of produce harvested. The lower percentage of samples positive for *E. coli* than of samples positive for coliforms and *Enterococcus* is expected, as *E. coli* is a gram-negative species of bacteria indicative of fecal contamination from a warm-blooded animal, whereas *Enterococcus* spp. (a genus of gram-positive bacteria) and coliforms (a general group of bacteria) are larger, more general categories of indicator bacteria. It is unlikely that the presence of these indicator bacteria is simply a result of poor sanitation and hygiene practices among the farmworkers given that they washed their hands with soap and water before beginning harvest and their sole activity was harvesting produce. It is more likely that farmworkers' hands are accumulating organic matter and indicator bacteria present in the agricultural environment (e.g., on plants, soil, or produce bins). Both coliforms and *Enterococcus* are naturally present in the guts of animals *(5, 36),* but they are also present in the environment *(36)* and could be introduced into the agricultural environment through various pathways (e.g., irrigation water, soil amendments, or contaminated tools or equipment). Similarly, the *E. coli* seen on some farmworker hands after harvest may indicate recent fecal contamination from a warm-blooded animal *(36)* or may indicate past environmental contamination, as *E. coli* is known to be persistent in the environment *(41).*

Farmworkers in all four intervention groups had lower concentrations of *Enterococcus* and *E. coli* on their hands than those in the control group. These results indicated that all four interventions were efficacious at reducing the concentrations of viable microbes on hands. The soap-based interventions likely reduced bacterial concentrations because soap is, by definition, an emulsifier, meaning it suspends hydrophobic compounds and, with them, any particles and microbes. These particles and microbes are then removed when hands are rinsed. These traditional soap and pumice soap intervention results are consistent with the results from a pilot study of a hand hygiene intervention using foam soap on soiled farmworker hands *(13).* The ABHS-based interventions likely reduced bacterial concentrations because ethanol, the active ingredient in the ABHS, is an effective antimicrobial agent *(3, 24).* These results suggest that ABHS can be an efficacious hand hygiene method, even on soiled hands. Although the soap-based and ABHS-based interventions work by different mechanisms, they were both efficacious at reducing microbes on soiled hands.

No intervention resulted in lower concentrations of coliforms than in the control group. Given the high variability of coliform concentrations in the control and all intervention groups and the generally small reductions (0 to 2 log) in coliforms previously reported with hand washing with foam soap and ABHS in the field *(13),* a larger sample size would likely have been needed for these interventions to demonstrate a statistically significant difference in coliform

FIGURE 4. *Photographs of hands and corresponding individual hand rinsate absorbance readings from samples collected after intervention from study participants—workers harvesting tomatoes on a farm in Mexico. Photographs were taken immediately before and after each worker performed hand hygiene.*

concentration compared with the control group. In a previous study comparing two-step ABHS and foam soap to a control group, only two-step ABHS had significantly lower levels of coliforms (~2 log *(13)*) than the control group. These results suggest that coliforms may be more persistent on hands than *E. coli* and *Enterococcus* spp. after hand washing or ABHS use. Given that total coliforms are poor indicators of fecal contamination in an environmental setting *(36),* it is unclear whether this result has a practical application in hand hygiene techniques.

All four interventions significantly removed soil from hands, soap-based interventions more so than ABHS-based interventions. It was expected that soap-based interventions would be the most efficacious at soil removal, given soap's emulsion properties described above. The removal of soil from hands with label-use of ABHS was a somewhat unexpected result, as the intervention does not involve wiping or removing anything from the hands. This result contradicts previous research on alcohol-based gels *(21, 34)*. However, study participants' hands were quite heavily soiled, and particles may have been solubilized in the ABHS and then dropped to the ground as the liquid portion evaporated. The two-step ABHS intervention uses paper towels to remove excess ABHS *(11)*; it is likely that additional soil particles were also removed by the paper towel when wiping dry.

The label-use ABHS and pumice soap interventions were similar to the traditional soap intervention in their effectiveness at reducing the microbial load on farmworker hands. However, the two-step ABHS intervention was more efficacious than the label-use ABHS and pumice soap interventions and was at least as efficacious as traditional soap at reducing microbes on soiled farmworker hands. The two-step ABHS intervention resulted in significantly lower percentages of positive samples and lower geometric mean concentrations of all indicators than did the label-use ABHS intervention (concentrations of coliforms and *Enterococcus* bacteria) (Fig. 2) and pumice soap intervention (prevalence and concentrations of coliforms and concentrations of *Enterococcus* bacteria) (Table 1 and Fig. 2). These results confirmed the results in a previous study of hand hygiene interventions with farmworkers harvesting jalapeños, where the same two-step ABHS intervention resulted in 1 to 2 log CFU fewer bacteria per hand than were found for the control group and performed better at eliminating indicator bacteria than hand washing with foam soap *(13)*. The results suggest that the most efficacious hand hygiene intervention in the agricultural environment may be a dual-mechanism intervention, such as the two-step ABHS, that combines physical removal from hands (e.g., with paper towels) with inactivation of indicator bacteria (e.g., by ethanol, the active ingredient in the ABHS and an effective antimicrobial agent *(3, 24)*).

This study has several strengths and limitations. It addresses a gap in the hand hygiene literature by evaluating the efficacy of hygiene interventions in an agricultural environment under real-use conditions. The study also compares an array of hygiene interventions, both soap based and ABHS based. Although the study was conducted on only one farm with participants harvesting only one type of produce, the similarity of the results to those of a previous pilot study evaluating foam soap and two-step ABHS on a different farm with different produce *(13)* suggests that these results may be broadly applicable to the agricultural field environment during produce harvest.

The results of this field evaluation of hand hygiene techniques have several implications. Hands may be a source of produce contamination if a farmworker is ill, and

hands may also contribute to produce contamination by transferring indicator bacteria from the environment (e.g., soil, water, or produce bins) to the produce during harvest. These results show that the performance of hand hygiene interventions can vary with the hygiene product and technique, and hand hygiene recommendations may need to be tailored to meet the environment and availability of hygiene resources. Hand hygiene performed incorrectly or with an ineffective product may not improve the microbial quality of hands even if they appear cleaner after hygiene. Although they did not remove soil as well as soap-based interventions, the ABHS-based interventions reduced the concentrations of indicator bacteria similarly to the soap-based interventions and can be viewed as efficacious hand hygiene solutions even on soiled hands.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank the farmers for their collaboration. We also thank Nereida Rivera, Roberto Blancas, and Aldo Galván from Universidad Autónoma de Nuevo León for the collection and processing of samples and Sanemba Aya Fanny, Valerie Morrill, Carol Ochoa, Vidisha Singh, and Amelia Van Pelt at Emory University for data entry. This project was financially sponsored by GOJO Industries, Inc., through an unrestricted research grant to cover partial salary for the effort of the study team, study supplies, and communication of results. Both Emory University and UANL covered the remainder of staff salary through internal funding and government fellowships and subsidies. UANL-affiliated authors provided significant input into the overall study design, data collection, and editing of the manuscript. Emory-affiliated authors provided significant input into the overall study design, data analysis, and writing of the manuscript. GOJO-affiliated authors provided significant input into the overall study design, choice of hygiene products evaluated, creation of Figure 1, and editing of the manuscript. Mention of trade names or commercial products does not constitute endorsement or recommendation for use.

REFERENCES

1. Aiello, A. E., R. M. Coulborn, V. Perez, and E. L. Larson. 2008. Effect of hand hygiene on infectious disease risk in the community setting: a meta-analysis. *Am. J. Public Health* 98:1372–1381.
2. Ailes, E. C., J. S. Leon, L. A. Jaykus, L. M. Johnston, H. A. Clayton, S. Blanding, D. G. Kleinbaum, L. C. Backer, and C. L. Moe. 2008. Microbial concentrations on fresh produce are affected by postharvest processing, importation, and season. *J. Food Prot.* 71:2389–2397.
3. Ali, Y., M. J. Dolan, E. J. Fendler, and E. L. Larson. 2001. Alcohols, p. 229–254. *In* S. S. Block (ed.), Disinfection sterilization and preservation. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.
4. Bloomfield, S. F., A. E. Aiello, B. Cookson, C. O'Boyle, and E. L. Larson. 2007. The effectiveness of hand hygiene procedures in reducing the risks of infections in home and community settings including handwashing and alcohol-based hand sanitizers. *Am. J. Infect. Control* 35:S27–S64.
5. Boehm, A. B., and L. M. Sassoubre. 2014. Enterococci as indicators of environmental fecal contamination. *In* M. S. Gilmore, D. B. Clewel, Y. Ike, and N. Shankar (ed.), Enterococci: from commensals to leading causes of drug resistant infection. Massachusetts Eye and Ear Infirmary, Boston.
6. Boyce, J. M., and D. Pittet. 2002. Guideline for hand hygiene in health-care settings: recommendations of the Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee and the HICPAC/SHEA/APIC/IDSA Hand Hygiene Task Force. Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America/Association for Professionals in Infection Control/Infectious Diseases Society of America. *Morb. Mortal. Wkly. Rep. Recommend. Rep.* 51(RR-16):1–45.
7. Calvin, L., and P. Martin. 2010. The U.S. produce industry and labor: facing the future in a global economy. Economic research report number 106. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Economic Research Service, Washington, DC. Available at: http://www.ers.usda.gov/media/135123/err106.pdf.
8. Critchlow, D. E., and M. A. Fligner. 1991. On distribution-free multiple comparisons in the one-way analysis of variance. *Commun. Stat. Theory Methods* 20:127–139.
9. Daniel, W. W. 1999. Biostatistics: a foundation for analysis in the health sciences, 7th ed., p. 571–606. John Wiley and Sons, Inc., Hoboken, NJ.
10. Davis, M. A., H. Sheng, J. Newman, D. D. Hancock, and C. J. Hovde. 2006. Comparison of a waterless hand-hygiene preparation and soap-and-water hand washing to reduce coliforms on hands in animal exhibit settings. *Epidemiol. Infect.* 134:1024–1028.
11. Edmonds, S. L., J. Mann, R. R. McCormack, D. R. Macinga, C. M. Fricker, J. W. Arbogast, and M. J. Dolan. 2010. SaniTwice: a novel approach to hand hygiene for reducing bacterial contamination on hands when soap and water are unavailable. *J. Food Prot.* 73:2296–2300.
12. Edmonds, S. L., R. R. McCormack, S. S. Zhou, D. R. Macinga, and C. M. Fricker. 2012. Hand hygiene regimens for the reduction of risk in food service environments. *J. Food Prot.* 75:1303–1309.
13. Fabiszewski de Aceituno, A., N. Heredia, A. Stern, F. Bartz, F. Venegas, L. Solis-Soto, J. Gentry-Shields, J. Leon, L.-A. Jaykus, and S. Garcia. 2016. Efficacy of two hygiene methods to reduce soil and microbial contamination on farmworker hands during harvest. *Food Control* 59:787–792.
14. Falkenhorst, G., L. Krusell, M. Lisby, S. B. Madsen, B. Bottiger, and K. Molbak. 2005. Imported frozen raspberries cause a series of norovirus outbreaks in Denmark, 2005. *Euro Surveill.* 10:E050922.2.
15. Heredia, N., L. Solis-Soto, F. Venegas, F. E. Bartz, A. M. Fabiszewski de Aceituno, L.-A. Jaykus, J. S. Leon, and S. Garcia. 2015. Validation of a novel rinse and filtration method for efficient processing of fresh produce samples for microbiological indicator enumeration. *J. Food Prot.* 78:525–530.
16. Hjertqvist, M., A. Johansson, N. Svensson, P. E. Abom, C. Magnusson, M. Olsson, K. O. Hedlund, and Y. Andersson. 2006. Four outbreaks of norovirus gastroenteritis after consuming raspberries, Sweden, June-August 2006. *Euro Surveill.* 11:E060907.1.
17. Jin, M., and B. Wang. 2014. Implementing multiple comparisons on Pearson chi-square test for an RxC contingency table in SAS. SAS technical paper 1544-2014. Proc. SAS Global Forum. SAS Institute, Cary, NC.
18. Johnston, L. M., L. A. Jaykus, D. Moll, J. Anciso, B. Mora, and C. L. Moe. 2006. A field study of the microbiological quality of fresh produce of domestic and Mexican origin. *Int. J. Food Microbiol.* 112:83–95.
19. Johnston, L. M., C. Moe, D. Moll, and L. A. Jaykus. 2006. The epidemiology of produce-associated outbreaks for foodborne disease, p. 37–72. *In* J. L. James (ed.), Microbial hazard identification of fresh fruit and vegetables. John Wiley and Sons, Inc., Hoboken, NJ.
20. Kruskal, W. H. 1952. A nonparametric test for the several sample problem. *Ann. Math. Stat.* 23:525–540.
21. Larson, E., and L. Bobo. 1992. Effective hand degerming in the presence of blood. *J. Emerg. Med.* 10:7–11.
22. Leon-Felix, J., R. A. Martinez-Bustillos, M. Baez-Sanudo, F. Peraza-Garay, and C. Chaidez. 2010. Norovirus contamination of bell pepper from handling during harvesting and packing. *Food Environ. Virol.* 2:211–217.
23. Lickness, J. 2014. Assessing microbial contamination on produce, environmental sources, and farm worker hands throughout the production process on farms and packing sheds in northern Mexico. M.S. thesis. Emory University, Atlanta.
24. Morton, H. E. 1950. The relationship of concentration and germicidal efficiency of ethyl alcohol. *Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci.* 53:191–196.
25. Pickering, A. J., A. B. Boehm, M. Mwanjali, and J. Davis. 2010. Efficacy of waterless hand hygiene compared with handwashing with soap: a field study in Dar es Salaam, Tanzania. *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.* 82:270–278.
26. Pickering, A. J., J. Davis, and A. B. Boehm. 2011. Efficacy of alcohol-based hand sanitizer on hands soiled with dirt and cooking oil. *J. Water Health* 9:429–433.

27. Pickering, A. J., T. R. Julian, S. Mamuya, A. B. Boehm, and J. Davis. 2011. Bacterial hand contamination among Tanzanian mothers varies temporally and following household activities. *Trop. Med. Int. Health* 16:233–239.
28. Racicot, M., A. Kocher, G. Beauchamp, A. Letellier, and J. P. Vaillancourt. 2013. Assessing most practical and effective protocols to sanitize hands of poultry catching crew members. *Prev. Vet. Med.* 111:92–99.
29. Ravaliya, K., J. Gentry-Shields, S. Garcia, N. Heredia, A. F. de Aceituno, F. E. Bartz, J. S. Leon, and L. A. Jaykus. 2014. Use of *Bacteroidales* microbial source tracking to monitor fecal contamination in fresh produce production. *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.* 80:612–617.
30. Schaffner, D. W., and K. M. Schaffner. 2007. Management of risk of microbial cross-contamination from uncooked frozen hamburgers by alcohol-based hand sanitizer. *J. Food Prot.* 70:109–113.
31. Seymour, I. J., and H. Appleton. 2001. Foodborne viruses and fresh produce. *J Appl. Microbiol.* 91:759–73.
32. Shapiro, S. S., and M. B. Wilk. 1965. An analysis of variance test for normality (complete samples). *Biometrika* 52:591–611.
33. Smith DeWaal, C., C. Roberts, and C. Catella. 2012. Outbreak alert! 1999-2008. Center for Science in the Public Interest, Washington, DC.
34. Todd, E. C. D., B. S. Michaels, J. Holah, D. Smith, J. D. Greig, and C. A. Bartleson. 2010. Outbreaks where food workers have been implicated in the spread of foodborne disease. Part 10. Alcohol-based antiseptics for hand disinfection and a comparison of their effectiveness with soaps. *J. Food Prot.* 73:2128–2140.
35. Traub-Dargatz, J. L., J. S. Weese, J. D. Rousseau, M. Dunowska, P. S. Morley, and D. A. Dargatz. 2006. Pilot study to evaluate 3 hygiene protocols on the reduction of bacterial load on the hands of veterinary staff performing routine equine physical examinations. *Can. Vet. J.* 47:671–676.
36. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 1997. Water: monitoring & assessment. 5.11. Fecal bacteria. Available at: http://water.epa.gov/type/rsl/monitoring/vms511.cfm. Accessed 1 December 2014.
37. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 2000. Guidance for data quality assessment. practical methods for data analysis. EPA QA/G-9. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC.
38. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. 2013. Food Code 2013, chap. 2, Management and personnel; part 2-3, Personal cleanliness. U.S. Food and Drug Administration, Public Health Service, College Park, MD. Available at: http://www.fda.gov/Food/GuidanceRegulation/RetailFoodProtection/FoodCode/ucm181242.htm#part2-3. Accessed September 2015.
39. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. 2013. Food Safety Modernization Act proposed rule for produce safety. Standards for the growing, harvesting, packing, and holding of produce for human consumption (corrected version). 21 CFR Parts 16 and 112. FDA-2011-N-0921. U.S. Food and Drug Administration, Washington, DC.
40. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. 2013. Statistics applied to microbiological analysis, section 4.10. *In* ORA laboratory manual, vol. III. U.S. Food and Drug Administration, Office of Regulatory Affairs, Washington, DC.
41. van Elsas, J. D., A. V. Semenov, R. Costa, and J. T. Trevors. 2011. Survival of Escherichia coli in the environment: fundamental and public health aspects. *ISME J.* 5:173–183.
42. Wheeler, C., T. M. Vogt, G. L. Armstrong, G. Vaughan, A. Weltman, O. V. Nainan, V. Dato, G. L. Xia, K. Waller, J. Amon, T. M. Lee, A. Highbaugh-Battle, C. Hembree, S. Evenson, M. A. Ruta, I. T. Williams, A. E. Fiore, and B. P. Bell. 2005. An outbreak of hepatitis A associated with green onions. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 353:890–897.
43. World Health Organization. 2009. WHO guidelines on hand hygiene in health care. WHO Press, Geneva.

Hand Washing Practices in a College Town Environment

Carl P. Borchgrevink, PhD
JaeMin Cha, PhD
SeungHyun Kim, PhD
The School of Hospitality Business
Michigan State University

Abstract **Many people do not wash their hands when the behavior in which they engage would warrant it. Most research of hand washing practices to date has taken place in high-traffic environments such as airports and public attraction venues. These studies have established a persistent shortcoming and a gender difference in hand washing compliance. Using field observations of 3,749 people in a college town environment, the research described in this article replicates and extends earlier work while identifying potential environmental and demographic predictors of hand washing compliance. Additionally, the authors' research suggests that proper hand washing practices, as recommended by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, are not being practiced. Finally, the authors' research raises a question as to the accuracy of earlier measurements of "proper" hand washing practices, suggesting that compliance rates are inflated. The results can help increase hand washing rates for the general public and thus decrease the risk of transmitting disease.**

Introduction

Many individuals take hand washing for granted and do not consider how essential hand washing is in the prevention of infections and disease. Thus they often fail to wash their hands when they engage in activity that would warrant or require hand washing. Research has established that people generally overstate the degree to which they wash their hands; that women are much more likely to wash their hands than men; and that while hand washing compliance appears to have increased in recent years much room for growth still exists. According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) (Mead et al., 1999), failing to wash or insufficiently washing hands contributes to almost 50% of all foodborne illness outbreaks. Additionally, Curtis and Cairncross (2003) performed a meta-analysis that suggests that hand washing with soap can reduce diarrheal disease risks by more than 40% and that hand washing interventions could save one million lives annually. Yet we do not know why people fail to wash their hands at recommended rates and in the proper fashion. Our research attempted to establish predictors of hand washing that can be used to induce higher rates of hand washing compliance.

Current Hand Washing Practices

Recent surveys establish that U.S. adults claim to wash their hands after using public restrooms at very high rates. In 2009, 94% (N = 2,516) suggested that they consistently wash their hands (QSR Magazine, 2009), while in 2010, 96% (N = 1,006) stated that they always wash their hands after using a public restroom (Harris Interactive, 2010). Self-reports of hand washing behavior have been criticized as unreliable as hand washing is a socially desirable activity (Judah, Aunger, Schmidt, Granger, & Curtis, 2009) and observational research suggests these high self-report rates are inflated (Harris Interactive, 2010).

The potential discrepancy aside, it is important to note that hand washing rates have trended upwards in recent years. The American Society for Microbiology and the American Cleaning Institute have studied hand washing practices since 1996. Most recently they reported on hand washing in restrooms at public attractions in five cities across the U.S. The restroom locations included Turner Field in Atlanta, the Museum of Science and Industry and Shedd Aquarium in Chicago, Penn Station and Grand Central Terminal in New York, and the Ferry Terminal Farmers Market in San Francisco (Harris Interactive, 2010). All locations experience high volumes daily, and at the composite level, the 2010 data (N = 6,028) establishes that 85% of the observed adults wash their hands after using a public restroom. This is an increase from 77% in 2007 (N = 6,076), which was somewhat lower than the 2005 rate of 83% (N = 6,336). With the exception of the Shedd Aquarium, which has seen a 3% dip in hand washing rates since 2005, all the venues saw a slight upward trend in observed hand washing rates (Harris Interactive, 2010). In 2003, hand washing rates were also observed across six North American airports, averaging 74% compliance (N = 4,046). The highest hand washing rates were obtained in Toronto with 95% while Chicago had the lowest rate at 62% (American Society for Microbiology, 2003).

The research consistently finds a gender bias in hand washing practices. Women wash their hands more frequently than men. In the 2003 study (American Society for Microbiology) it was observed that 83% of women washed their hands after using the restroom,

whereas only 74% of the men did so. In a multi-year study across public attractions, women consistently wash more than men across all years and venues (Harris Interactive, 2010). The average observed hand washing rates for women were 93% in 2010, 88% in 2007, and 90% in 2005. The equivalent rates for men were 77%, 66%, and 75%, respectively.

A study of 120 secondary school students (Guinan, McGuckin-Guinan, & Sevareid, 1997) found that 58% of female students and 48% of male students washed their hands after using the restroom, although only 28% of the female students and 8% of the male students used soap. In a university campus public restroom study (Johnson, Sholoscky, Gabello, Ragni, & Ogonosky, 2003), 61% of women and 37% of men (N = 175) were observed washing their hands, while the hand washing rate climbed to 97% for women and fell to 35% of men when a sign was introduced to encourage hand washing. Similarly, in a British 32-day study of highway service station restrooms (N = 198,000) that observed entry and soap use with electronic sensors, it was found that 65% of women and 32% of men washed their hands, but that the hand washing rate increased to as much as 71% for women and 35% for men when messages designed to encourage hand washing were displayed using electronic dot matrix screens (Judah et al., 2009).

A study of the hand washing practices of university students living in a dormitory found that women wash their hands after urinating 69% of the time and after bowel movements 84% of the time, whereas the corresponding figures for males were 43% and 78% (Thumma, Aiello, & Foxman, 2008). In a study of restaurant food workers (Green et al., 2006), food handlers washed their hands only 32% of the time when their behaviors made such hand washing required.

A review of the literature on foodborne disease outbreaks from 1975 to 1998 identified 81 foodborne disease outbreaks involving 14,712 people within which 93% of the foodborne outbreaks involved infected food workers transmitting pathogens to the food with their unwashed hands (Guzewich & Ross, 1999). An observation of 80 women in a bar bathroom (Hayes, 2002) found that only 40% washed their hands; when the researcher engaged the subject and modeled hand washing, the hand washing rate increased to 56%, while it dropped to 27% when the researcher appeared to be simply talking on her cell phone. This research also noted that the female subjects were less likely to wash their hands later in the night than earlier in the evening (r = -.44, p < .01).

It is evident from the reviewed research that room for improvement exists in hand washing practices. Additional research is needed to further understand how and why hand washing rates differ and if such rates can be influenced by environmental factors within the restroom. Gender is associated with marked differences in hand washing rates. Are other demographic variables such as age also associated with hand washing rates? Furthermore, evidence exists that environmental variables such as signage and posters influence hand washing rates and other health-related behaviors (Etter & Laszlo, 2005; Judah et al., 2009). Do other environmental variables, such as sink conditions and type of faucet impact hand washing rates? Does the hand washing rate on campus differ from the rate off campus?

It is unclear from the reviewed literature whether the various reported rates of hand washing reflect hand washing with soap as recommended by the CDC or if the rates incorporate practices somewhat inconsistent with the established recommendations. As such, our study used three measures of hand washing, defined as 1) no washing—leaving the restroom without washing or rinsing hands, 2) attempted washing—wetting hands but not applying soap, and 3) washing hands with soap, in addition to measuring the duration of washing. This added distinction is important because Burton and co-authors (2011) reported that washing with soap and water is more effective at removing fecal bacteria from hands than washing with water alone.

Methods

Participants and Procedures

Direct observations of hand washing behaviors were conducted by 12 research assistants in restrooms located across a college town. Observers were instructed to be unobtrusive and disguise their observation of hand washing behaviors. To ensure this and ensure accurate measurement and coding consistency, each of the observers met researchers individually for training and attended training meetings as a group.

All observations were recorded according to a standard coding form. The coding form consisted of the subject ID, date, subject's age group, observation time, gender, hand washing behaviors, the type and availability of drying mechanisms (i.e., not available, hot air, paper towel, or both), location of restrooms (off campus versus on campus), type of faucet (standard faucet versus motion detection), the cleanliness of sink conditions, and availability of hand washing signage.

Washing behaviors were recorded into three categories: no washing (leaving the restroom without washing or rinsing their hands), attempted hand washing (wetting hands without using soap), and washing hands with soap. Observers also discreetly measured the total length of time in terms of the number of seconds subjects' hands were placed under running water during washing, lathering, and rinsing. The time of observation was collected and nominal time categories were formed for the purpose of analyses. Due to the unobtrusive nature of our observations, the subject's age group was estimated using the trained observers' subjective evaluations and the subject was placed into one of two groups: college age or younger and older than college age. The cleanliness of sink conditions had three categories including dirty, reasonable, and clean, which was also based on the subjective evaluation of observers. The presence of a hand washing sign was added to the coding form later based on observer feedback.

Statistical Analysis

Descriptive data were compiled and further analyzed using Chi-square analysis and ANOVA. Specifically, Chi-square analysis was used to identify statistically significant differences in subjects' demographic variables, environmental variables in the restrooms, and among hand washing behaviors. ANOVA was used to establish mean differences in the length of time hands were placed under running water across the above specified variables. Kappa and paired t-test statistics were calculated, using a subsample (n = 90) to evaluate inter-rater reliability.

Results

Inter-Rater Reliability

Evaluation of inter-rater agreement is an important step in ensuring reliability in observa-

tional studies, especially when studies involve multiple observers. We selected four different restrooms (n = 44, located in two off-campus restrooms; and n = 46, located in two on-campus restrooms) to determine the inter-rater reliability among observers. The observers agreed 100% on the environmental variables. For the two dependent variables, the time spent washing time and other washing behaviors, paired-samples t-tests (Fleiss, 1981), and Cohen's Kappa (Cohen, 1960) were used. A Kappa statistic of more than .8, more than .6, and more than .4 is considered to have "almost perfect," "substantial," and "moderate" agreement, respectively (Landis & Koch, 1971). Excellent inter-rater reliability was demonstrated as indicated by nonsignificant paired t-test result in estimating washing time (p > .01) and Kappa of .89 in evaluating washing behaviors.

Characteristics of Sample and Overall Findings

Table 1 presents characteristics of the sample and observation settings. Of the 3,749 subjects observed, approximately 54% of observations took place in restrooms located off campus. Sixty-two percent of observations took place in the afternoon, followed by evening/night (23.6%) and morning (14.4%). Of all subjects, 60.5% of the observed subjects were women. About 62% (61.6%) of the subjects were estimated as college age or younger, with the remainder estimated to be older than college. Nearly all restrooms had a mechanism for drying hands (98.7%). About 64% of the restrooms in the study contained signs encouraging hand washing. Seventy-seven percent of the restrooms were equipped with a standard faucet while 22.9% had motion detection faucets.

Overall, 66.9% of the subjects used soap when washing their hands. Of these, 1.2% did not dry their hands, but left the restrooms with wet hands. About 23% attempted to wash their hands, that is, they wet their hands but did not use soap. A total of 10.3% did not wash their hands *at all* after using the restroom. CDC (2012) recommends that people should rub their soaped hands for 15 to 20 seconds before rinsing thoroughly. Our measure of duration included the length of time placed under running water while subjects were washing, rubbing, and rinsing their hands. Nonetheless, as shown in Table 2, only 5% or so spent more than 15 seconds in combined washing, rubbing, and rinsing of their hands.

TABLE **1**

Characteristics of Sample and Restroom Settings (*N* = 3,749)

Variables	*n*	%
Observation time		
Morning	538	14.4
Afternoon	2,326	62.0
Evening/night	885	23.6
Gender		
Male	1,479	39.5
Female	2,270	60.5
Age		
College group and younger than college group	2,310	61.6
Older than college group	1,439	38.4
Drying		
Not available	47	1.3
Only paper	2,799	74.7
Only air dryer	331	8.8
Both paper and air dryer	572	15.3
Faucet		
Standard faucet	2,889	77.1
Motion detection	860	22.9
Sink condition		
Dirty	219	5.9
Reasonable	1,779	47.5
Clean	1,750	46.7
Location		
On campus	1,755	46.8
Off campus	1,994	53.2
Sign		
Sign	1,548	63.7
No sign	882	36.3

Results From Chi-Square Analysis

The Chi-square analysis revealed statistically significant differences in hand washing behaviors across time of observation, gender, age, sink condition, and hand washing signage (Table 3). For example, 12.4% observed during evenings did not wash their hands while the morning and afternoon rates of leaving the restroom without attempting to wash were 8.6% and 9.4%, respectively. Subjects washed their hands significantly more with soap during mornings (70.6%) than during afternoons (66.4%) and evenings (67%). The gender difference was confirmed with women using soap and engaging in proper hand washing behavior significantly more (77.9%) than men (50.3%). About 7% of the women and 14.6% of the men did not wash their hands at all, while 15.1% of the women and 35.1% of the men simply wet their hands with water. Those estimated to be older than college (70.3%) washed their hands with soap significantly more than the college age and younger group (64.8%).

When restrooms contained hand washing signs, subjects used soap more (68.5%) than subjects in restrooms that had no such signs (60.5%). Sink cleanliness influenced hand washing behaviors as well. When sinks were clean, 73.9% washed their hands using soap, while the rate for reasonably clean and dirty sinks was 61.2% and 59.4%, respectively. No

TABLE **2**

Overall Hand Washing Behavior and Length of Hand Washing Time (*N* = 3,749)

Variables	*n*	%
Washing behavior		
Not washing	384	10.3
Wetting hands without soap	856	22.8
Washing hands with soap	2,509	66.9
Length of hand washing time		
0 seconds	384	10.3
1–4 second(s)	824	22.0
5–8 seconds	1,432	38.2
9–14 seconds	911	24.2
15 seconds or longer	198	5.3

TABLE **3**

Chi-Square Test: Comparison of Hand Washing Behavior by Sample Demographics and Restroom Settings (*N* = 3,749)

Variables	Not Washing	Wetting Hands Without Soap	Washing With Soap	χ^2
	10.3% (*n* = 384)	22.8% (*n* = 856)	66.9% (*n* = 2,509)	
	%	%	%	
Observation time				13.2*
Morning	8.6	20.8	70.6	
Afternoon	9.4	24.2	66.4	
Evening/night	12.4	20.6	67.0	
Gender				311.3*
Male	14.6	35.1	50.3	
Female	7.1	15.1	77.9	
Age				12.9*
College group and younger than college group	10.6	24.6	64.8	
Older than college group	9.7	20.0	70.3	
Faucet				0.8
Standard faucet	9.8	22.9	67.3	
Motion detection	10.8	23.0	66.2	
Sink condition				91.2*
Dirty	19.6	21.0	59.4	
Reasonable	10.7	28.1	61.2	
Clean	8.1	17.9	73.9	
Location				4.8
On campus	10.3	24.3	65.4	
Off campus	9.7	21.6	68.6	
Sign				17.4*
Sign	9.7	21.7	68.5	
No sign	10.7	28.8	60.5	

*$p < .01$.

statistically significant differences in subjects' hand washing behavior were found across faucet type (standard faucet versus motion detection) or restroom location (on campus versus off campus).

Results From ANOVA

Multi-way ANOVA was conducted to evaluate the mean differences among identified factors in terms that may influence the length of washing time (Table 4). Statistically significant differences were found for gender, age group, type of faucet, sink condition, and hand washing signage. The average washing time for men and women, although short for both, was 6.27 seconds for men and 7.07 seconds for women. The gender effect persists. The age group older than college spent significantly more time washing their hands (mean = 6.93 seconds) than did college group and younger than college group (mean = 6.48 seconds). The presence of a sign also influenced washing time; the mean score in the presence of a sign was 7.08 seconds and 6.50 seconds without. Subjects spent significantly more time washing their hands when the sink condition was clean (mean = 7.20 seconds), compared to when the sink appeared reasonably clean (mean = 6.36 seconds) or dirty (mean = 6.16 seconds). No significant differences in hand washing time were found across time of observation or restroom locations.

Discussion

Hand washing is the most effective thing one can do to reduce the spread of infectious diseases according to CDC (CDC, 2012; Mead et al., 1999). Our study provided detailed information about how long and in what environments different groups engaged in various hand washing behaviors. While earlier research reported that not all wash their hands, prior studies have not identified factors associated with proper hand washing behaviors. Additionally, previous studies did not clearly distinguish between washing with and without soap. Our study recognizes the importance of environmental factors that promote proper hand washing behaviors. To our knowledge, our study was one of the first studies to focus on hand washing behaviors and the length of time spent washing while incorporating environmental factors and the time of observation.

The observed hand washing behaviors and the length of time washing hands relate differently to different factors. Our study supports earlier work in observing that men need more encouragement than women to engage in proper hand washing behaviors, although most men and women do wash their hands using soap. Nonetheless, the percentages who simply wet their hands was significantly higher for men (35.1%) than for women (15.1%).

While our study was not specifically designed to test for the intervention effect of a hand washing sign, the study did find that the presence of a sign influenced both hand washing behaviors and the length of washing time. This is an important finding as a high percentage of people fail to wash their hands properly, and signs that include messages highlighting correct hand washing or reminders to use soap may increase compliance. It appears that this kind of explicit reminder may be particularly useful in men's restrooms, given that more than one-third of men simply wet their hands without using soap.

In previous studies the automated and sequenced phases of the device/sink resulted in significant improvement in hand washing practices (Larson, Bryan, Adler, Lee & Blane, 1997; Larson, McGeer, & Quiaishi, 1991). Our study showed that the type of faucet itself (standard faucet versus motion detection) did not impact hand washing behaviors. Care must be taken in the interpretation of washing time, as it is possible to equate washing time with the motion-detected dispensing of water, much as our study did in terms of manual water flow.

More importantly, the findings of our study showed that it is important to maintain clean sink conditions, as clean sinks promoted proper hand washing procedures as well as increased length of time washing hands. When sinks are dirty, some may choose not to wash their hands, despite knowing they should. Studying the effect of time of day on hand washing behavior, a relatively new research focus, showed that hand washing generally decreased as the evening progressed.

The most important findings of our research relate to the distinctions among hand washing behaviors and the length of time hands were washed. Specifically, less than 6% of the sample approached the recommended hand washing duration. Furthermore, our study identified that a large proportion of subjects engaged in hand washing behavior that did not involve the use of soap. It is interesting to note that if the proportion of people who were observed using soap when washing their hands were combined with those who only used water, the hand washing rates reach the higher levels reported in other studies. This raises the question of whether hand washing compliance rates have been inflated by way of definition in earlier work.

TABLE **4**

Multi-Way ANOVA: Hand Washing Time by Demographics and Restroom Settings (*N* = 3,749)

Variables	Hand Washing Time Mean (Seconds)	*F*	η^2
Observation time		.92	.022
Morning	6.50		
Afternoon	6.81		
Evening/night	6.77		
Gender		25.21*	.082
Male	6.27		
Female	7.07		
Age		8.14*	.058
College group and younger than college group	6.48		
Older than college group	6.93		
Faucet		49.29*	.114
Standard faucet	6.45		
Motion detection	7.74		
Sink condition		15.76*	.091
Dirty	6.16		
Reasonable	6.36		
Clean	7.20		
Location		2.23	.024
On campus	6.63		
Off campus	6.86		
Sign		7.97*	.057
Sign	7.08		
No sign	6.50		

Note. Total mean = 6.75 (*SD* = 4.76), mean = 7.52 (*SD* = 4.41).
*$p < .01$.

Limitations and Future Research

While the data from our study are informative, it should be noted that observations only took place in one college town environment. Care should be therefore taken in generalizing the findings.

As an alternative to the self-reporting method, direct and unobtrusive observations of hand washing were used as a way to enhance reliability and validity. It should be recognized, however, that even an apparent unobtrusive observation may influence hand washing behaviors, as the simple presence of others in a restroom may lead to increased compliance (Bittner, Rich, Turner, & Arnold, 2002; Drankiewicz & Dundes, 2003; Edwards et al., 2002; Nalbone, Lee, Suroviak, & Lannon, 2005).

While our study attempted to investigate the role that a hand washing sign would have on hand washing behavior, the subjects were not asked whether they recalled seeing the sign or whether they could recall the messages. Future research should consider sign content, design, and placement.

In our study the act of drying was measured. Approximately 2% of subjects who

attempted to wash their hands (i.e., wetting hands without soap) or washed hands with soap did not dry their hands at all, but we do not know if those who attempted to dry their hands achieved dry hands. This would be good to include in future studies as studies have demonstrated that the transfer of microorganisms is more likely to occur from wet skin than from dry skin (Mackintosh, & Hoffman, 1984; Merry, Millder, Findon, Webster, & Neff, 2001; Patrick, Miller, & Findon, 1997).

Conclusion

Our study replicated and extended earlier work on hand washing practices. While past studies have focused on high-traffic venues such as transportation hubs and stadiums, our study focused on hand washing behaviors in a college town environment. Field observations by trained observers in a variety of restrooms provided a sample of 3,739 people who were unobtrusively watched to note their hand washing behaviors.

The findings were consistent with earlier research in that a significant gender bias was found. Women wash their hands significantly more often, use soap more often, and wash their hands somewhat longer than men. Both men and women fell far short, however, of CDC-recommended hand washing durations, averaging 6.27 and 7.07 seconds, respectively. Only 5.3% of the sample washed their hands for 15 seconds or more. Considering the definition of hand washing and the careful training of observers, this particular finding raises the specter of significant inflation in earlier reported hand washing compliance rates. Future studies need to measure hand washing compliance carefully.

Additionally, our study established that restroom environmental conditions and signage are important. Specifically, hand washing compliance was greater when restroom sinks were clean and when signs encouraging hand washing were posted.

Hand washing compliance and practices as reported in this and previous studies fall short of the ideal. The public needs to be continuously encouraged to engage in proper hand washing practices. In addition, careful attention to restroom environmental conditions and signage may help increase compliance. Given the established gender bias, consideration should be given to the content of the messages targeting men and women. Perhaps men and women would respond differently to gender-targeted messages.

***Acknowledgements*:** An earlier, work-in-progress, version of this manuscript was presented at the 2011 International Council on Hotel, Restaurant, and Institutional Education Annual Conference.

Corresponding Author: Carl P. Borchgrevink, Associate Professor, The School of Hospitality Business, Michigan State University, 645 North Shaw Lane, 233 Eppley Center, East Lansing, MI 48824. E-mail: carlb@bus.msu.edu.

References

American Society for Microbiology. (2003). *Another U.S. airport travel hazard—dirty hands.* Retrieved from http://www.eurekalert.org/pub_releases/2003-09/asfm-aua091103.php

Bittner, M., Rich, E., Turner, P., & Arnold, W. (2002). Limited impact of sustained simple feedback based on soap and paper towel consumption on the frequency of hand washing in an adult intensive care unit. *Infection Control Hospital Epidemiology, 23*(3), 120–126.

Burton, M., Cobb, E., Donachie, P., Judah, G., Curtis, V., & Schmidt, W. (2011). The effect of hand washing with water or soap on bacterial contamination of hands. *International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health, 8*(1), 97–104.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2012). *Hand washing: Clean hands save lives.* Retrieved from http://www.cdc.gov/handwashing/

Cohen, J. (1960). A coefficient of agreement for nominal scales. *Educational Psychology Measurement, 20*(1), 37–46.

Curtis, V., & Cairncross, S. (2003). Effects of washing hands with soap on diarrhoea risk in the community: A systematic review. *The Lancet Infectious Diseases, 3*(5), 275–281.

Drankiewicz, D., & Dundes, L. (2003). Hand washing among female college students. *American Journal of Infection Control, 31*(2), 67–71.

Edwards, D., Monk-Turner, E., Poorman, S., Rushing, M., Warren, S., & Willie, J. (2002). Predictors of hand washing behavior. *Social Behavior and Personality: An International Journal, 30*(8), 751–756.

Etter, J., & Laszlo, E. (2005). Evaluation of a poster campaign against passive smoking for world no-tobacco day. *Patient Education and Counseling, 57*(2), 190–198.

Fleiss, J. (1981). The measurement of interrater agreement. In *Statistical methods for rates and proportions* (pp. 212–236). New York: John Wiley & Sons.

Green, L.R., Selman, C.A., Radke, V., Ripley, D., Mack, J.C., Reimann, D.W., Stigger, T., Motsinger, M., & Bushnell, L. (2006). Food worker hand washing practices: An observation study. *Journal of Food Protection, 69*(10), 2417–2423.

Guinan, M.E., McGuckin-Guinan, M., & Sevareid, A. (1997). Who washes hands after using the bathroom? *American Journal of Infection Control, 25*(5), 424–525.

Guzewich, J., & Ross, M.P. (1999). *Evaluation of risk related to microbiological contamination of ready-to-eat foods by food preparation workers and the effectiveness of interventions to minimize those risks.* Silver Spring, MD: Food and Drug Administration, Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition. Retrieved from http://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodSafety/RetailFoodProtection/ucm210138.htm

Harris Interactive. (2010). *Survey of hand washing behavior (trended): Prepared for the American Microbiology Society and the American Cleaning Institute.* Retrieved from http://www.microbeworld.org/images/stories/washup/2010_handwashing_behavior_survey.pdf

continued on page 24

References *continued from page 23*

Hayes, M.C. (2002). *Hand washing behavior of women in public restrooms*. Missouri Western State University. Retrieved from http://clearinghouse.missouriwestern.edu/manuscripts/371.php

Johnson, H.D., Sholoscky, D., Gabello, K.L., Ragni, R.V., & Ogonosky, N.M. (2003). Gender differences in hand washing behavior associated with visual behavior prompts. *Perceptual and Motor Skills, 97*(3), 805–810.

Judah, G., Aunger, R., Schmidt, W., Granger, S., & Curtis, V. (2009). Experimental pretesting of hand-washing interventions. *American Journal of Public Health, 99*(S2), 405–411.

Landis, J., & Koch, G. (1977). The measurement of observer agreement for categorical data. *Biometrics, 33*(1), 159–174.

Larson, E., Bryan, J., Adler, L.M., & Blane, C. (1997). A multifaceted approach to changing hand washing behavior. *American Journal of Infection Control, 25*(1), 3–10.

Larson, E., McGeer, A., & Quiaishi, Z. (1991). Effect of an automated sink on hand washing practices and attitudes in high-risk units. *Infection Control Hospital Epidemiology, 12*(7), 422–428.

Mackintosh, C., & Hoffman, P. (1984). An extended model for transfer of microorganisms via the hands; differences between organisms and the effect of alcohol disinfection. *Journal of Hygiene, 92*(3), 345–355.

Mead, P.S., Slutsker, L., Dietz, V., McCaig, L.F., Bresee, J.S., Shapiro, C., Griffin, P.M., & Tauxe, R.V. (1999). Food related death and illness in the United States. *Emerging Infectious Diseases, 5*(5), 607–625.

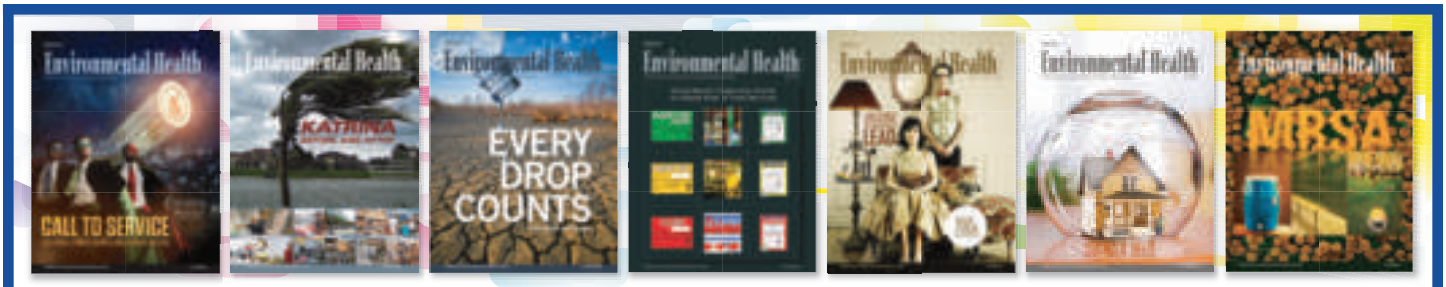
Merry, A., Millder, E., Findon, G., Webster, C., & Neff, S. (2001). Touch contamination levels during anaesthetic procedures and their relationship to hand hygiene procedures: A clinical audit. *British Journal of Anaesthesia, 87*(2), 291–294.

Nalbone, P., Lee, K., Suroviak, A., & Lannon, J. (2005). The effects of social norms on male hygiene. *Individual Differences Research, 3*(3), 171–176.

Patrick, D., Miller, T., & Findon, G. (1997). Residual moisture determines the level of touch-contact associated transfer following hand washing. *Epidemiology and Infection, 119*(3), 319–325.

QSR Magazine. (2009). *Are Americans washing their hands?* Retrieved from http://www.qsrmagazine.com/news/are-americans-washing-their-hands

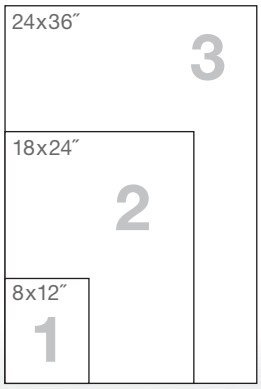
Thumma, J., Aiello, A.E., & Foxman, B. (2008). The association between hand washing practices and illness symptoms among college students living in a university dormitory. *American Journal of Infection Control, 37*(1), 70–72.



Showcase Environmental Health
and All It Encompasses

For many years NEHA's *Journal of Environmental Health* has been adorned by visually-stunning and creative covers portraying a wide variety of environmental health topics. You can now own these amazing cover images in poster size. Use the walls of your department and office to display to visitors, your boss and staff, and the public what environmental health encompasses and your pride in your profession.

For more information and to place your order:
- ➡ Go to neha.org/JEH
- ➡ Contact Kristen Ruby at kruby@neha.org or 303.756.9090, ext. 341



- Three different frame-able sizes*
- Glossy, high-quality prints
- Select covers from 2005 to the present

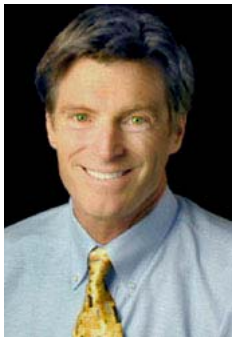
*Framing available on request for an extra fee.

Special Offer: Get a free 8x12″ print of any cover with the order of at least one poster.

Copyright 2013, National Environmental Health Association (www.neha.org)

11 HAND WASHING FACTS

Could singing Yankee Doodle save your life?



By Jay Hardy, CLS, SM (ASCP)

Jay Hardy is the founder and president of Hardy Diagnostics.

After studying microbiology at California State Universities at Fullerton and Long Beach, he completed his Medical Technology internship at Santa Barbara Cottage Hospital.

The company began in 1980, shortly after Hardy served as a Medical Technologist and microbiologist at Goleta Valley Hospital in California.

1.

80% of all infectious diseases are transmitted by touch.

According to experts, without a vaccine, the single most important thing you can do to prevent getting the flu is to wash your hands.

2.

The Solution to Pollution is Dilution.

While soap may not kill all viruses, thorough hand washing will decrease the viral counts to a point below the infectious threshold.

3.

Caught in the act (or lack of).

95% of the population says that they wash their hands after using a public toilet. However when 8,000 people were monitored across five large cities in the US, they found the actual number to be more like 67%.

Chicago topped the list at 83%. New York was the worst at less than half.

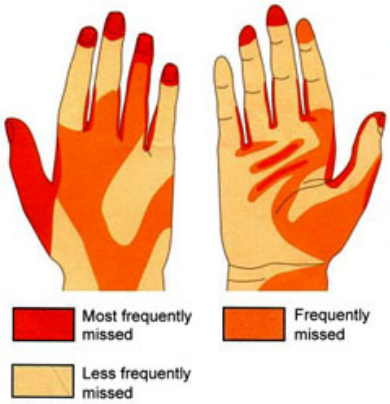
4.

Do as I say, not as I do…

A poll of pediatric ICU physicians showed that they ***claimed*** their rate of hand washing between patients was 73%, but when followed and observed, the hand washing rate was found to be less than 10%. Listen carefully and you can hear Dr. Semmelweis rolling over in his grave. The top excuses for not hand washing among doctors? Too busy and dry skin.

5.

Where's the dirt?



CDC studies show that the number of bacteria per square centimeter on the human body are as follows:

- Scalp – 1,000,000
- Forearm – 10,000
- Arm pit – 500,000
- Abdomen – 40,000
- Hands of medical personnel – 40,000 to 500,000

When it comes to hands, fingernails and the surrounding areas harbor the most microorganisms.

6.

Who has it?

A recent study showed that 21% of the health care workers in ICU had varying counts of *Staphylococcus aureus* on their hands.

7.

Too busy?

One study demonstrated that hand washing guidelines were followed 25% of the time during times when the floor was overcrowded and understaffed. Compliance rose to 70% when the floor was properly staffed and not overcrowded with patients.

8.

And the winner is…

Many studies have shown that alcohol rubs are more effective than plain or even antimicrobial soaps, unless the hands are heavily soiled. However we can't get overconfident with alcohol rubs. Despite its effectiveness against many organisms, alcohols have very poor activity against bacterial spores, protozoan oocysts, and certain non-enveloped (nonlipophilic) viruses. In addition, alcohol has no residual effect as some antimicrobial soaps do.

9.

How long is enough?

The CDC recommends at least 15 seconds. However, studies show that the reduction of skin bacteria is nearly ten times greater by washing with soap for 30 seconds rather than 15. Even so, remember that alcohol gels are even more effective than soap.

The average wash time for health care workers? 9 seconds.

Children (and why not adults?) are taught to sing “Yankee Doodle Dandy” start to finish before rinsing. This takes about 15 seconds. If you don’t know the words to Yankee Doodle, the Happy Birthday song sung twice will suffice.

10.

Some like it hot.

But if they do, hot water can increase the chance of dermatitis. Hot or warm water has not been proven to increase the effectiveness of hand washing. Cold water, though not as comfortable, produces less skin damage from detergents especially with repeated washings.

11.

The two layers of bacteria.

The outer layer of bacteria found on your hands is termed “**Transient Flora**”. This layer is potentially the most dangerous for transmitting disease from one person to another. Fortunately, it is also the most easily eliminated by hand washing. The deeper layer is called “**Resident Flora**”. This bacterial population is more likely to be made up of innocuous bacteria such as *Staphylococcus epidermidis* and *Corynebacteria* spp. (diptheroids); and is more resistant to washing, since they occupy the deeper layers of skin cells.

Jay Hardy
HARDY DIAGNOSTICS

World Health Organization
REGIONAL OFFICE FOR Africa

Division of Prevention and Control of Non-Communicable Diseases
Food Safety and Nutrition

Fact Sheet 2º

Hand Washing and Food Safety

A bulk of the foodborne disease outbreaks are attributable to poor hygienic practices and improper handling of food. Undoubtedly, adequate personal hygiene practices are essential in reducing the risks of a foodborne illness. Hand washing is one of the most effective and cheapest measures against infections and foodborne diseases.

FAST FACTS

- Many foodborne diseases and pathogenic microorganisms are spread by contaminated hands.
- Foodborne pathogens, such as *salmonellosis, shigellosis, hepatitis A, giardiasis* and *campylobacteriosis* are transmitted via the faecal-oral route. These account for a substantial number of disease outbreaks in developing countries.
- Good quality drinking-water and good personal hygiene in food preparation and handling are therefore of utmost importance in preventing the spread of disease.[1]

Foodborne disease

Many foodborne diseases and pathogenic microorganisms are spread by contaminated hands. Many of these illnesses occur unnecessarily, since the faecal-oral routes of disease transmission are easily prevented.[1]

WHO reports that 90% of the annual deaths from diarrhoea are among children particularly in developing countries. A significant number of the deaths could be attributed to shigella, which causes dysentery or bloody diarrhoea. [2]

A study on the microbial quality of street foods in Accra, Ghana showed among others the significance of proper hand-washing practices, use of soap and environmental hygiene. Among the reported risk factors for street food contamination were cooking of food well in advance of consumption, exposure of food to flies, and working with food at ground level and by *hand*.[3]

Significance of proper hand washing to food safety

Judicious washing of hands can significantly reduce bacterial contamination and risk of foodborne illness.

Reports indicate that the simple act of washing hands with soap and water reduces incidents of diarrhoea from *shigella* and other causes by up to 35 percent. [2]

Proper hand washing

Hands should ideally be washed, with soap or ash, under running water. Rubbing hands vigorously 15-20 seconds until a soapy lather

[1] Healthy Villages – A guide for communities and community health workers. WHO. 2003.
[2] Water for Health: Taking Charge. WHO. 2001.
[3] Mensah *et al.* Street Foods in Accra, Ghana: How Safe Are They? Bulletin of the World Health Organization. 2002.

appears, and scrubbing between fingers and fingernails.

Where there is no system, running water can be organized by using a water butt with a tap. If there is a shortage of water, using soap with a small quantity of water in a bowl is adequate.[4]

Washing of hands should be particularly be done:

- Before food preparation;
- Before eating;
- Before serving food;
- During food preparation to avoid cross-contamination;
- Before and after handling raw meat, poultry and fish products;
- After changing diapers;
- After blowing nose/sneezing;
- After using the toilet, not just after defecation, since the pathogens can also be picked up from previous users of toilets via door handles, taps and drying towels.[5]
- After handling unsanitary objects such as waste/garbage containers;
- After contact with toxic substances or chemicals;
- After touching/handling livestock or pets

In all these activities hands may become contaminated with pathogens or toxic chemical residues that can be transferred to food.[5]

Health education in food safety

Experience has shown that well designed and implemented educational programmes, is a feasible and cost-effective means of improving health status.[6]

Adequate food safety and hygiene education/promotion particularly in schools with the provision of adequate sanitary and hand-washing facilities are essential.

WHO technical support and actions in food safety education

A special focus is being made at collaborating with education authorities to promote food safety education in primary and secondary level, among both students and parents. Work is also underway on the promotion of participatory community-based food safety education and awareness-raising strategies.

For More Information on Food Safety and Nutrition please contact Division of Prevention and Control of Non-communicable Diseases (DNC). B.P. 6 Congo Brazzaville.

[4] Food, Environment and Health: A Guide for Primary School Teachers. WHO. 1990

[5] Basic Food Safety for Health Workers. Adams M and Mortarjemi Y. WHO. Geneva. 1999

[6] Foodborne disease: a focus for health education. WHO. 2000

Journal of Food Protection, Vol. 70, No. 3, 2007, Pages 661–666

Factors Related to Food Worker Hand Hygiene Practices†

LAURA R. GREEN,[1]* VINCENT RADKE,[2] RYAN MASON,[3] LISA BUSHNELL,[4] DAVID W. REIMANN,[5] JAMES C. MACK,[6] MICHELLE D. MOTSINGER,[7] TAMMI STIGGER,[8] AND CAROL A. SELMAN[2]

[1]RTI International, 2951 Flowers Road, Suite 119, Atlanta, Georgia 30341; [2]National Center for Environmental Health, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, MS F-28, 4770 Buford Highway, Atlanta, Georgia 30341; [3]Tennessee Department of Health, 425 5th Avenue North, Cordell Hull Building—6th Floor, Nashville, Tennessee 37247; [4]Connecticut Department of Public Health, Food Protection Program, Division of Environmental Health, MS #51 FDP, 410 Capitol Avenue, P.O. Box 340308, Hartford, Connecticut 06134-0308; [5]Minnesota Department of Health, 410 Jackson Street, Suite 500, Mankato, Minnesota 56001; [6]Oregon State Public Health, Office of Environmental Public Health, 800 N.E. Oregon, Suite 608, Portland, Oregon 97232; [7]Colorado Department of Public Health and Environment, Consumer Protection Division, 4300 Cherry Creek Drive South, Denver, Colorado 80246; and [8]RARE Hospitality International, Inc., 8215 Roswell Road, Building 600, Atlanta, Georgia 30350, USA

MS 06-426: Received 7 August 2006/Accepted 24 October 2006

ABSTRACT

To identify factors related to food worker hand hygiene practices, we collected (i) observational data on food worker (n = 321) hand hygiene practices (hand washing and glove use) and (ii) observational and interview data on factors related to hygiene behavior, such as worker activity, restaurant characteristics, worker food safety training, and the physical and social environment. Results indicated that hand washing and glove use were more likely to occur in conjunction with food preparation than with other activities (e.g., handling dirty equipment) and when workers were not busy. Hand washing was more likely to occur in restaurants whose food workers received food safety training, with more than one hand sink, and with a hand sink in the observed worker's sight. Glove use was more likely to occur in chain restaurants and in restaurants with glove supplies in food preparation areas. Hand washing and glove use were also related to each other—hand washing was less likely to occur with activities in which gloves were worn. These findings indicate that a number of factors are related to hand hygiene practices and support suggestions that food worker hand hygiene improvement requires more than food safety education. Instead, improvement programs must be multidimensional and address factors such as those examined in this study.

Many reported foodborne illness outbreaks originate in food service establishments *(25),* and sporadic foodborne illnesses have been associated with having eaten outside the home *(11, 19).* Additionally, food workers' poor personal hygiene is an important contributor to foodborne illness outbreaks *(15, 25).* For example, Olsen et al. *(25)* found that annually from 1993 to 1997, poor personal hygiene of food workers was a contributing factor in 27 to 38% of foodborne illness outbreaks, and Guzewich and Ross *(15)* found that in 89% of outbreaks caused by food contaminated by food workers, pathogens were transferred to food by workers' hands.

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration's (FDA) Food Code for retail establishments includes guidelines on prevention of food contamination by workers' hands *(15, 29).* Hand washing is one of the FDA's recommended prevention methods, for it can significantly reduce transmission of pathogens from hands to food and other objects *(15, 22, 24).* The Food Code indicates that proper hand washing should take at least 20 s and include running warm water, soap, friction between the hands for 10 to 15 s, rinsing, and drying with clean towels or hot air. In addition, the Food Code specifies situations in which hands should be washed, such as before food preparation and after handling raw meat or poultry. The FDA also recommends that bare-hand contact should be prevented when working with ready-to-eat (RTE; i.e., safe to eat without further cooking) food and minimized when working with non-RTE food, because hand washing may not always be sufficient to prevent the transmission of pathogens from hands to other items, such as food *(3, 9, 22).* The Food Code suggests that barriers, such as deli tissue, tongs, and disposable gloves, be used for this purpose. Gloves are commonly used as barriers in food service establishments, and anecdotal evidence suggests that glove use for this purpose may be increasing. Proper glove use can decrease the transfer of pathogens from hands to food *(22, 23),* but some researchers and practitioners have argued that glove use may lead to less safe hand washing practices *(10, 15, 21).*

Research on the prevalence of hand washing and glove use in food-service establishments indicates that these hand hygiene practices do not occur as often as they should. For example, food workers have reported that they sometimes or often do not wash their hands and/or wear gloves when they should, do not always wash their hands after touching raw meat, and do not always change their gloves after touching raw meat *(6, 13).* Additionally, observational studies have found low rates of hand hygiene practices. For example, the FDA observed improper hand washing in 73% of restaurants and failure to prevent bare-hand contact with RTE foods in 57% of restaurants *(28).* Additionally, both Clayton and Griffith *(5)* and Green et al. *(14)* found that observed food workers washed their hands in only a third of the instances in which they should have washed them.

* Author for correspondence. Tel: 770-488-4332; Fax: 770-488-7310; E-mail: lrg0@cdc.gov.

† The findings and conclusions in this report are those of the authors and do not necessarily represent the views of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

TABLE 1. *Observed activities for which hand washing is recommended*

When hand washing should occur	Activity	Description
Before the activity	Food preparation	Engaging in food preparation, including working with exposed food, clean equipment and utensils, and unwrapped single-use articles
	Putting on gloves for food preparation	Putting on gloves in order to engage in food preparation (see above)
After the activity and before beginning another activity	Preparing raw animal product	Preparing raw animal product (animal products that have not been cooked or processed; uncooked eggs, meat, poultry, and fish)
	Eating, drinking, tobacco use	Eating, drinking, or using tobacco (unless from a closed beverage container handled to prevent hand contamination)
	Coughing, sneezing, tissue use	Coughing, sneezing, or using a handkerchief or disposable tissues
	Handling dirty equipment	Handling dirty equipment, utensils, or cloths
	Touching body	Touching human body parts other than clean hands and clean, unexposed arms

These findings, along with evidence that poor personal hygiene frequently contributes to foodborne-illness outbreaks, indicate that improvement of food workers' hygiene practices is needed. Researchers and practitioners contend that a range of personal, social, and environmental factors influence food worker practices and that these factors need to be addressed to successfully change food workers' behavior *(8, 26, 27).* Thus, the purpose of this study was to identify factors related to food worker hand hygiene practices.

This article is the second one based on a study we conducted on food worker hand hygiene practices. For this study, we observed food workers for an extended period and recorded specific information on their work activities and the hygiene practices associated with those activities. We also collected data on possible factors related to hygiene behavior through interviews with restaurant managers and observations of restaurant environments. In the first article on this study, we presented descriptive data on food worker hand washing and glove-use practices across different work activities *(14).* In this article, we present data on the relationships between hand washing and glove use and factors proposed to be related to hygiene behavior. These factors include worker activity (e.g., worker busyness), restaurant characteristics (e.g., ownership: chain versus independent), worker training, physical environment (e.g., number of sinks), and the social environment and management (e.g., management encouragement of hand hygiene). These factors were chosen because existing theories or data suggest that they may affect hygiene behavior (*1, 6–8, 12, 13, 16–18, 20, 26*).

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Restaurants. This study was conducted by environmental health specialists (specialists) affiliated with the Environmental Health Specialists Network (EHS-Net), a collaborative project of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), the FDA, the U.S. Department of Agriculture, and 9 states (California, Connecticut, New York, Georgia, Iowa, Minnesota, Oregon, Rhode Island, Tennessee; Colorado participated until 2005). EHS-Net is focused on the investigation of environmental antecedents of foodborne illness, including food preparation and hygiene practices.

The study comprised randomly selected restaurants located in designated geographical areas in six of the 2004 EHS-Net states (Colorado, Connecticut, Georgia, Minnesota, Oregon, Tennessee; see Green et al. *(14)* for more information on the sample). While there is variability in these states' adoption of the FDA Food Code, all had similar hand washing guidelines and none prohibited bare-hand food contact at the time of the study.

Data collection. The study was conducted over 3 months in the fall of 2004. Before the start of the study, the study protocol was reviewed and approved by CDC's Institutional Review Board (IRB) and the appropriate IRBs in the participating states. Additionally, all specialists participated in training designed to increase data collection consistency. (See Green et al. *(14)* for more information.)

In each restaurant, a specialist first interviewed the restaurant manager, owner, or other employee to collect data on restaurant characteristics, food preparation training and policies, manager certification, food preparation processes, and hand washing encouragement. The specialist then conducted a 10- to 15-min observation of the kitchen to collect information on the environment, such as the number of hand sinks with warm water, soap, and towels or hot-air drying methods. Then, using an observation method similar to the one designed by Clayton and Griffith *(5),* the specialist conducted a 45- to 50-min observation of one worker who was preparing food. Workers were chosen on the basis of the specialist's ability to observe them relatively unobtrusively (e.g., without interfering with their work). To limit the influence of the specialist's presence on worker behavior, the specialist observed the worker for 10 to 15 min before beginning the 45- to 50-min data collection period to allow the worker time to adjust to the specialist's presence. Additionally, workers were not made aware of precisely which aspects of their behavior were being recorded during the observations.

During this observation, the specialist recorded data on specific activities that required hand washing (according to the Food Code; see Table 1) and the hand hygiene behaviors associated with those activities. For the activities of food preparation and putting on disposable gloves for food preparation, hand washing should occur before each activity. For the remaining activities (preparing

TABLE 2. *Variables used in logistic regression models of appropriate hand washing and glove use*

Variable	Variable values	Hand washing model	Glove use model
Worker activity			
Actity type	Food preparation; putting on gloves for food preparation; preparing raw animal product; eating, drinking, using tobacco/coughing, sneezing, using tissue; handling dirty equipment; touching the body	✓	✓
Worker busyness	Yes (worker engaged in ≥8.6 [median] activities) vs no (worker engaged in <8.6 activities)	✓	✓
Hands washed appropriately with activity	Yes vs no		✓
Gloves worn during activity	Yes vs no	✓	
Restaurant characteristics			
Restaurant ownership—chain	Yes vs no	✓	✓
Complex food preparation processes	Yes vs no	✓	✓
Worker training			
Hand hygiene taught to workers	Yes vs no	✓	✓
Workers provided with food safety training	Yes vs no	✓	✓
Management certification required	Yes vs no	✓	✓
Physical environment			
Multiple hand sinks	Yes (>1 sink) vs no	✓	
Hand sink close to worker	Yes (<10 ft from sink) vs no (≥10 ft from sink)	✓	
Hand sink in worker's sight	Yes vs no	✓	
Hand washing supplies at hand sinks	Yes (all hand sinks had warm water, soap, and recommended drying methods) vs no	✓	
Glove supplies in food preparation areas	Yes vs no		✓
Social environment/management			
Worker visibility to manager	Yes (manager could see worker some/most of the observation) vs no	✓	✓
Worker visibility to customers	Yes (worker somewhat/fully visible) vs no	✓	✓
Management encouragement of hand washing	Yes (respondents said hand washing was encouraged) vs no	✓	

raw animal products; eating, drinking, or using tobacco; coughing, sneezing, or using tissues; handling dirty equipment or utensils; and touching human body parts other than clean hands and arms), hand washing should occur after each activity and before beginning another activity. Data were also collected on the activity of preparing raw produce. However, because of inconsistencies in the way specialists identified raw produce, these data were excluded from analysis.

The specialist also collected data on hand hygiene behaviors in which the worker engaged along with each of the observed activities. The specialist recorded whether the worker placed his or her hands under running water, whether the worker used soap, whether and how the worker dried his or her hands (e.g., paper towel, cloth towel, clothes), and whether the worker wore and removed his or her gloves. Data were also recorded on whether hand sanitizer was used, but those data are not discussed here. Finally, the specialist recorded data on the physical environment during the observation, such as proximity of the observed worker to the nearest sink.

Data analysis. We used multivariate logistic regression models to determine the combination of factors that best explained hand hygiene practices. Stepwise regression procedures were used to guide the determination of the explanatory variables included in the final models. A model was conducted for appropriate hand washing, which entailed (i) removing gloves, if worn; (ii) placing hands under running water; (iii) using soap; and (iv) drying hands with paper towels, cloth towels, or hot air. A model was also conducted for glove use, which entailed wearing gloves during work activities. For these models, the level of analysis was activity; thus, the outcome variables were dichotomous and indicated whether the hygiene practice (hand washing or glove use, depending on the model) occurred with each observed activity for which hand washing is recommended. Because the observed worker in each restaurant engaged in multiple activities during the observation, activity was treated as a repeated measure in all analyses. The state in which data collection took place was included as a control variable in both regression models. Preliminary forward stepwise regression analyses were conducted with the SAS software package (SAS, Cary, N.C.); all other regression analyses were conducted with the SUDAAN software package (RTI International, Research Triangle Park, N.C.) to account for the repeated measures aspect of these data.

Table 2 describes the explanatory variables included in the regression models. These fell into the categories of worker activity

(activity type, worker busyness, hands washed, gloves worn), restaurant characteristics (ownership: chain versus independent, complex food preparation processes [i.e., holding, cooling, reheating or freezing of foods]), worker training (hand hygiene taught to food workers, food safety training provided to food workers, management certification required), physical environment (multiple hand sinks, hand sink closeness to worker, hand sink in worker's sight, hand washing supplies at hand sinks, glove supplies in food preparation areas), and social environment and management (worker visibility to manager, worker visibility to customers, management encouragement of hand washing). All explanatory variables were included in the initial regression model of appropriate hand washing. All explanatory variables, except those expected to only be related to hand washing (multiple hand sinks, hand sink closeness to worker, hand sink in worker's sight, hand washing supplies at hand sinks, and management encouragement of hand washing) were included in the glove-use model. Additionally, whether gloves were worn in conjunction with the activity was included as an explanatory variable in the hand washing model and whether hands were washed appropriately in conjunction with the activity was included as an explanatory variable in the glove-use model. Odds ratios (ratios above 1 indicate that the hygiene behavior was more likely to occur with the activity; ratios below 1 indicate that the hygiene behavior was less likely to occur with the activity) and Wald *F* test probability values (values at 0.05 or lower are considered significant) are provided for each explanatory variable included in the final regression models.

RESULTS

Descriptive analyses. Of the 1,073 establishments we contacted, 808 were eligible to participate (i.e., met our definition of a restaurant, were open for business, and did not belong to a chain with an already participating restaurant). Of these, 333 agreed to participate, yielding a response rate of 41%. Because of missing information, data are reported on only 321 restaurants. Sixty-one percent (196) of the restaurants were independently owned, 38% (121) were chains or franchises, and 1% (4) had missing data concerning ownership.

The median duration of individual worker observations was 48 min (25% quartile = 45; 75% quartile = 48). Observed workers engaged in a total of 2,195 activities falling into one of the defined activity categories. The estimated median number of activities observed per hour per worker was 8.6 (25% quartile = 5; 75% quartile = 12.3). The most frequent activity, accounting for 36% of all activities (786 activities), was handling dirty equipment, followed by food preparation (23%; 514 activities); preparing raw animal product (17%; 384 activities); putting on gloves for food preparation (10%; 224 activities); touching the body (9%; 197 activities); eating, drinking, or using tobacco (3%; 77 activities); and coughing, sneezing, or using tissue (1%; 13 activities). Because of the low frequency of the last two groups of activities, they were combined into one category called ''eating/coughing'' for the remaining analyses.

Workers washed their hands appropriately (i.e., removed gloves, if worn; placed their hands under running water; used soap; and dried their hands with paper or cloth towels or hot air) in conjunction with 27% (588 of 2,195 activities) of all activities. They wore gloves during 28% (608 of 2,195 activities) of all work activities. More detailed descriptive data on these hand hygiene activities can be found in Green et al. *(14).*

TABLE 3. *Logistic regression model of appropriate hand washing (*n *= 2,149)*

Hand washing	Odds ratio[a]	Lower 95% CI[b]	Upper 95% CI
Worker activity			
Activity type			
Food preparation (reference)	—	—	—
Putting on gloves for food preparation	0.64	0.34	1.22
Preparing raw animal product	0.44*[c]	0.31	0.61
Eating/coughing	0.48*	0.31	0.74
Handling dirty equipment	0.13*	0.07	0.23
Touching body	0.39**	0.20	0.74
Worker was busy	0.45*	0.30	0.66
Worker wore gloves during the activity	0.41*	0.26	0.67
Worker training			
Workers provided with food safety training	1.81***	1.06	3.12
Physical environment			
Multiple hand sinks	1.63***	1.07	2.47
Hand sink in worker's sight	1.93**	1.15	3.23

[a] Odds ratios above 1 indicate that hand washing was more likely to occur with the activity; odds ratios below 1 indicate that hand washing was less likely to occur with the activity.
[b] CI, confidence interval.
[c] Wald *F* test probability values: * $P < 0.001$, ** $P < 0.01$, *** $P < 0.05$.

Appropriate hand washing. The final regression model for appropriate hand washing was comprised of the variables that best accounted for the variance in appropriate hand washing ($R^2 = 0.142$). Those included activity type, worker busyness, glove use, food safety training provided to food workers, multiple sinks, and hand sink in worker's sight (Table 3). Appropriate hand washing was more likely to occur with food preparation activities than with all other activities except putting on gloves. Appropriate hand washing was also more likely to occur in restaurants where food workers received food safety training, where there were multiple hand sinks, and where a hand sink was in the observed worker's sight. Appropriate hand washing was less likely to occur when workers were busy and when gloves were worn at the point at which hand washing should occur.

Glove use. The activities of food preparation and putting on gloves for food preparation were combined for these analyses. Specifically, all activities categorized as putting on gloves for food preparation were recategorized as food preparation activities in which gloves were worn. The final regression model for glove use was composed of the variables that best accounted for the variance in glove use ($R^2 = 0.235$). Those included activity type, worker busyness, hand washing, restaurant ownership, and glove supplies in food preparation areas (Table 4). Glove use was more likely

TABLE 4. *Logistic regression model of glove use (*n *= 2,160)*

Glove use	Odds ratio[a]	Lower 95% CI[b]	Upper 95% CI
Worker activity			
Activity type			
Food preparation (reference)[c]	—	—	—
Preparing raw animal product	0.69	0.41	1.18
Eating/coughing	0.17**[d]	0.05	0.62
Handling dirty equipment	0.42*	0.27	0.67
Touching body	0.52*	0.30	0.92
Worker was busy	0.51**	0.31	0.83
Worker washed hands along with activity	0.37*	0.23	0.58
Restaurant characteristics			
Restaurant ownership—chain	3.41*	1.91	6.09
Physical environment			
Glove supplies in food preparation areas	5.47*	2.88	10.38

[a] Odds ratios above 1 indicate that glove use was more likely to occur with the activity; odds ratios below 1 indicate that glove use was less liketly to occur with the activity.

[b] CI, confidence interval.

[c] The activities of food preparation and putting on gloves for food preparation were combined for this analysis.

[d] Wald F test probability values: * $P < 0.001$, ** $P < 0.01$, *** $P < 0.05$.

to occur during food preparation activities than during activities involving eating/coughing, handling dirty equipment, and touching the body. Glove use was also more likely to occur in chain restaurants and in restaurants with glove supplies in the food preparation areas. Glove use was less likely to occur when workers were busy and during activities with which workers washed their hands appropriately.

DISCUSSION

Both appropriate hand washing and glove use were related to activity type—workers were more likely to wash their hands appropriately and wear gloves with food preparation than with most other activities. This finding is encouraging, for it suggests that at least some workers understand the need to protect food from hand contamination. Appropriate hand washing and glove use were also related to worker busyness—these hand hygiene behaviors were less likely to occur when workers were busy (i.e., engaged in relatively larger numbers of activities needing hand washing). Because food workers have identified time pressure as a barrier to engaging in safe food preparation practices *(6, 12, 20),* these results are perhaps not surprising. However, given that time pressure is also inherent to the food service industry, these results are troubling. We have previously suggested that restaurant managers ensure adequate staffing for the workload and emphasize the importance of food safety over speed to combat the effects of time pressure on safe food preparation practices *(12).* Clayton and Griffith *(5)* have proposed that restaurants evaluate their food preparation activities in light of the frequency with which hand washing is needed. A reduction in the number of needed hand washings may lessen time pressure and thereby increase the likelihood that food workers will engage in the remaining needed hand washings and don gloves when appropriate.

Hand washing and glove use were related to each other—appropriate hand washing was less likely to occur with activities in which gloves were worn than with activities in which gloves were not worn. These results suggest that workers who wear gloves do not remove them and wash their hands as they should. Although some researchers and practitioners have contended that glove use can promote poor hand washing practices *(10, 15, 21),* little data exists on this issue. More research is needed to understand the relationship between glove use and hand washing.

Appropriate hand washing was positively related to two factors associated with restaurants' hand sinks: multiple hand sinks and a hand sink in the worker's sight. These factors contribute to sink accessibility, which likely promotes hand washing. Appropriate hand washing was also more likely to occur in restaurants in which the manager reported that food workers received food safety training. This finding is consistent with other findings of an association between knowledge and training and safe food preparation practices *(4).*

Glove use was related to restaurant ownership—workers were more likely to wear gloves in chain restaurants than in independent restaurants. This finding suggests that glove use may be determined, at least in part, by restaurant management. Some types of restaurants, such as chains, may be more likely to require and institutionalize glove use. Gloves were also worn more often when glove supplies were accessible in food preparation areas. As with sinks and hand washing, glove accessibility likely promotes glove use.

The findings of this study indicate that a number of factors are related to hand hygiene practices and support those who have suggested that food worker hand hygiene improvement requires more than the provision of food safety education. Instead, improvement programs must be multidimensional and address additional factors *(8, 26, 27).* These factors may include, but are certainly not limited to, those found to be significant in this study: activity type, worker busyness, number and location of hand sinks, availability of supplies (e.g., gloves, soap, towels), restaurant ownership, and the relationship between prevention methods (i.e., glove use and hand washing).

The FDA recommends that barriers such as gloves be used to prevent hand contact specifically with RTE food. Although we examined glove use during food preparation, we did not distinguish between RTE food and non-RTE food (other than raw meat or poultry). Explanatory variables for glove use with RTE food may differ from those identified in our study. Additionally, because of concerns about data collection complexity, we did not collect data on some hand hygiene behaviors that are considered important by the FDA *(29).* For example, we did not measure how long workers washed their hands or whether they cre-

ated friction between their hands. The inclusion of such factors may have affected our findings.

There are a number of factors that may impact hand hygiene behavior that we did not examine in this study. For example, we did not measure individual characteristics of the observed food workers, such as age, gender, and food safety knowledge, attitudes, and beliefs. Evidence suggests that such individual characteristics influence food safety behavior *(2, 13)*. This study also does not allow us to make causal inferences about the relationships among variables. For example, the relationship between hand washing and the presence of a hand sink in the observed worker's sight was significant and positive. However, we cannot determine if the presence of a sink in sight causes workers to wash their hands more frequently or if there is some other explanation for the relationship (e.g., workers choose to work close to a sink because they plan to wash their hands frequently). Thus, although our data indicate that there are significant relationships between a number of factors and hand hygiene behavior, more research is needed to determine the causal nature of those relationships.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Jim Mann with the Handwashing Leadership Forum for allowing portions of the "Handwashing for Life" videotape to be used in our data collection training. We also thank Curtis Blanton (CDC) and Michael Penne (RTI International) for their assistance with data analysis and E. Scott Brown (Lockheed Martin Information Technology) for developing the study database. Lastly, we thank the restaurant managers and owners who agreed to participate in the study.

REFERENCES

1. Allwood, P., T. Jenkins, C. Paulus, L. Johnson, and C. Hedberg. 2004. Hand washing compliance among retail food establishment workers in Minnesota. *J. Food Prot.* 67:2825–2828.
2. Altekruse, S., D. Street, S. Fein, and A. Levy. 1995. Consumer knowledge of foodborne microbial hazards and food-handling practices. *J. Food Prot.* 59:287–294.
3. Ansari, S., S. Sattar, V. Springthorpe, G. Wells, and W. Tostowaryk. 1988. Rotavirus survival on human hands and transfer of infectious virus to animate and nonporous inanimate surfaces. *J. Clin. Microbiol.* 26:1513–1518.
4. Campbell, M., C. Gardner, J. Dwyer, S. Isaacs, P. Krueger, and J. Ying. 1998. Effectiveness of public health interventions in food safety: a systematic review. *Can. J. Public Health* 89:197–202.
5. Clayton, D., and C. Griffith. 2004. Observations of food safety practices in catering using notational analysis. *British Food J.* 106:211–227.
6. Clayton, D., C. Griffith, P. Price, and A. Peters. 2002. Food handlers' beliefs and self-reported practices. *Int. J. Env. Health Res.* 12:25–39.
7. Cotterchio, M., J. Gunn, T. Coffill, P. Tormey, and M. Barry. 1998. Effect of a manager training program on sanitary conditions in restaurants. *Public Health Rep.* 113:353–358.
8. Ehiri, J., and G. Morris. 1996. Hygiene training and education of food handlers: does it work? *Ecol. Food Nutr.* 35:243–251.
9. Ehrenkranz, N., and B. Alfonso. 1991. Failure of bland soap handwash to prevent hand transfer of patient bacteria to urethral catheters. *Infect. Control Hosp. Epidemiol.* 12:654–662.
10. Fendler, E., M. Dolan, and R. Williams. 1998. Handwashing and gloving for food protection. Part I: examination of the evidence. *Dairy Food Environ. San.* 18:814–823.
11. Friedman, C., R. Hoekstra, M. Samuel, R. Marcus, J. Bender, B. Shiferaw, S. Reddy, S. Ahuja, D. Helfrick, F. Hardnett, M. Carter, B. Anderson, and R. Tauxe, for the Emerging Infections Program FoodNet Working Group. 2004. Risk factors for sporadic *Campylobacter* infection in the United States: a case-control study in FoodNet sites. *Clin. Infect. Dis.* 38(Suppl. 3):S285–296.
12. Green, L., and C. Selman. 2005. Factors impacting food workers' and managers' safe food preparation practices: a qualitative study. *Food Prot. Trends* 25:981–990.
13. Green, L., C. Selman, A. Banerjee, R. Marcus, C. Medus, F. Angulo, V. Radke, S. Buchanan, and the EHS-Net Working Group. 2005. Food service workers' self-reported food preparation practices: an EHS-Net study. *Int. J. Hyg. Environ. Health* 208:27–35.
14. Green, L. R., C. A. Selman, V. Radke, D. Ripley, J. C. Mack, D. W. Reimann, T. Stigger, M. Motsinger, and L. Bushnell. 2006. Food worker hand washing practices: an observation study. *J. Food Prot.* 69:2417–2423.
15. Guzewich, J., and M. Ross. 1999. Evaluation of risks related to microbiological contamination of ready-to-eat food by food preparation workers and the effectiveness of interventions to minimize those risks. Available at: http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/~ear/rterisk.html. Accessed 1 April 2006.
16. Jenkins-McLean, T., C. Skilton, and C. Sellers. 2004. Engaging food service workers in behavioral-change partnerships. *J. Env. Health* 15–19.
17. Jumaa, P. 2005. Hand hygiene: simple and complex. *Int. J. Infect. Dis.* 9:3–14.
18. Kaplan, L., and M. McGuckin. 1986. Increasing handwashing compliance with more accessible sinks. *Infect. Control* 7:408–410.
19. Kassenborg, H., K. Smith, D. Vugia, T. Rabatsky-Ehr, M. Bates, M. Carter, N. Dumas, M. Cassidy, N. Marano, R. Tauxe, and F. Angulo, for the Emerging Infections Program FoodNet Working Group. 2004. Fluoroquinolone-resistant *Campylobacter* infections: eating poultry outside of the home and foreign travel are risk factors. *Clin. Infect. Dis.* 38(Suppl. 3):S279–S284.
20. Kendall, P., L. Melcher, and L. Paul. 2000. Factors affecting safe food handling practices in restaurants. Unpublished data. Study conducted by the Department of Food Science and Human Nutrition, Colorado State University Cooperative Extension, Fort Collins.
21. Lynch, R., M. Phillips, B. Elledge, S. Hanumanthaiah, and D. Boatright. 2005. A preliminary evaluation of the effect of glove use by food handlers in fast food restaurants. *J. Food Prot.* 68:187–190.
22. Michaels, B., C. Keller, M. Blevins, G. Paoli, T. Ruthman, E. Todd, and C. Griffith. 2004. Prevention of food worker transmission of foodborne pathogens: risk assessment and evaluation of effective hygiene intervention strategies. *Food Service Tech.* 4:31–49.
23. Montville, R., Y. Chen, and D. Schaffner. 2001. Glove barriers to bacterial cross-contamination between hands to food. *J. Food Prot.* 64:845–849.
24. Montville, R., Y. Chen, and D. Schaffner. 2002. Risk assessment of hand washing efficacy using literature and experimental data. *Int. J. Food Microbiol.* 73:305–313.
25. Olsen, S., L. MacKinon, J. Goulding, N. Bean, and L. Slutsker. 2000. Surveillance for foodborne disease outbreaks—United States, 1993–1997. *Morb. Mortal. Wkly. Rep.* 49:1–51.
26. Pittet, D. 2001. Improving adherence to hand hygiene practice: a multidisciplinary approach. *Emerg. Infect. Dis.* 7:234–240.
27. Rennie, D. 1995. Health education models and food safety education. *J. R. Soc. Health* 115:75–79.
28. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. 2004. FDA report on the occurrence of foodborne illness risk factors in selected institutional foodservice, restaurant, and retail food store facility types (2004). Available at: http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/~dms/retrsk2.html. Accessed 1 April 2006.
29. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. 2005. Food code, 2005. Available at: http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/~dms/fc05-toc.html. Accessed 1 April 2006.

Reference Document: 2009 FDA Food Code

Provision(s): Paragraph 5-202.12 (C)

Document Name: Motion Sensor Activated Faucets v03

Date: May 1, 2010, Editorial Change June 3, 2013, Editorial Change March 6, 2014

Question: Does Food Code paragraph 5-202.12 (C) apply to water-conserving motion sensor activated faucets if re-activation is by movement of the hands under the faucet without physical contact with the fixture?

Response:
Paragraph 5-202.12 (C) of the Food Code states that self-closing, slow-closing, or metering faucets at a handwashing sink shall provide a flow of water for at least 15 seconds without the need to reactivate the faucet. This paragraph (5-202.12 (C)) does not address the use of motion-activated handwashing faucets that can provide a flow of water for the required time period without restriction of handwashing during reactivation of the faucet. There does not, however, appear to be a conflict in achieving a proper handwashing per Section 2-301.12 with the use of water conserving motion-sensor activated handwashing faucets, as there would not be a restricted water flow or restricted use of the hands with the reactivation of the sensors.

References:
1. 2009 Food Code, 2-301.12 Cleaning Procedure, 2-301.14 When to Wash, 2-301.15 Where to Wash, 5-202.12 (C) Handwashing Sink, Installation, and Annex 3, Section 2-301.12.

The information on this page is part of the Food and Drug Administration's (FDA's) Food Code Reference System (FCRS), a database which is available at http://accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/fcrs/. Links to any non-Federal organizations are provided solely as a service to our users. These links do not constitute an endorsement of these organizations or their programs by the FDA or the Federal Government, and none should be inferred. Any reference to a commercial product, process, service, or company is not an endorsement or recommendation by the U.S. government, the Department of Health and Human Services, FDA or any of its components. FDA is not responsible for the content of the individual organization Web pages found at these links. FDA is also not responsible for any subsequent changes to the Web addresses for these links after March 6, 2014.

Attachment A - References (FDA Food Code Employee Health Interventions – Reducing Norovirus)

1. Ahmed, S.M., et al., *Global prevalence of norovirus in cases of gastroenteritis: a systematic review and meta-analysis.* The Lancet infectious diseases, 2014. **14**(8): p. 725-730.
2. Bresee, J.S., et al., *The etiology of severe acute gastroenteritis among adults visiting emergency departments in the United States.* Journal of Infectious Diseases, 2012. **205**(9): p. 1374-1381.
3. Hall, A.J., et al., *Norovirus disease in the United States.* Emerging Infectious Diseases, 2013. **19**(8): p. 1198-1205.
4. Hall, A.J., et al., *Vital Signs: Foodborne Norovirus Outbreaks-United States, 2009-2012.* Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report, 2014. **63**: p. 491-495.
5. Hoffmann, S., et al., *Annual cost of illness and quality-adjusted life year losses in the United States due to 14 foodborne pathogens.* Journal of Food Protection, 2012. **75**: p. 1292-1302.
6. Atmar, R.L., et al., *Norwalk virus shedding after experimental human infection.* Emerging infectious diseases, 2008. **14**(10): p. 1553.
7. Teunis, P.F., et al., *Norwalk virus: how infectious is it?* Journal of Medical Virology, 2008. **80**(8): p. 1468-1476.
8. Atmar, R.L., et al., *Determination of the 50% human infectious dose for Norwalk virus*. Journal of Infectious Diseases, 2014. **209**(7): p. 1016-1022.
9. Hall, A.J., et al., *Updated norovirus outbreak management and disease prevention guidelines*. 2011: US Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.
10. Lopman, B., et al., *Environmental transmission of norovirus gastroenteritis.* Current Opinion in Virology, 2012. **2**: p. 96-102.
11. Hall, A.J., et al., *Epidemiology of foodborne norovirus outbreaks, United States, 2001-2008.* Emerging Infectious Diseases, 2012. **18**: p. 1566-1573.
12. Carpenter, L.R., et al., *Food worker experiences with and beliefs about working while ill.* Journal of Food Protection, 2013. **76**: p. 2146-2154.
13. Bureau of Labor Statistics. *Occupational employment statistics.* In: U.S. Department of Labor, ed, 2013.

Clinical Infectious Diseases Advance Access published April 21, 2015

Detection and quantification of airborne norovirus during outbreaks in healthcare facilities

Laetitia Bonifait[1], Rémi Charlebois[1], Allison Vimont[2], Nathalie Turgeon[1], Marc Veillette[1], Yves Longtin[3], Julie Jean[2,4] and Caroline Duchaine[1,5,*]

[1]Centre de recherche de l'institut universitaire de cardiologie et de pneumologie de Québec, Québec, Canada

[2]Institut sur la nutrition et les aliments fonctionnels, Université Laval, Québec, Canada

[3]Lady Davis Institute of Medical Research at the Jewish General Hospital and McGill University Faculty of Medicine, Montreal, Canada

[4]Départements des sciences des aliments et de nutrition, Faculté des sciences de l'agriculture et de l'alimentation, Université Laval, Québec, Canada

[5]Département de biochimie, de microbiologie et de bio-informatique, Faculté des sciences et de génie, Université Laval, Québec, Canada

CORRESPONDING AUTHOR: Mailing address: Caroline Duchaine, Ph.D., Centre de Recherche de l'Institut Universitaire de Cardiologie et de Pneumologie de Québec, 2725 Chemin Ste-Foy, Québec, Canada, G1V 4G5. Phone: (418) 656-8711 ext. 5837. Fax: 418 656-4509. E-mail: Caroline.Duchaine@bcm.ulaval.ca

40-WORD SUMMARY

This study investigates the presence of norovirus bioaerosols during gastroenteritis outbreaks in healthcare facilities. It shows the presence and the resistance of bioaerosols to the stress of aerosolization, suggesting a potential mode of transmission for norovirus.

© The Author 2015. Published by Oxford University Press on behalf of the Infectious Diseases Society of America. All rights reserved. For Permissions, please e-mail: journals.permissions@oup.com.

Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

ABSTRACT

Background. Noroviruses are responsible for at least 50% of all gastroenteritis outbreaks worldwide. Noroviruses GII can infect humans via multiple routes including direct contact with an infected person, contact with fecal matter or vomitus, and with contaminated surfaces. Though norovirus is an intestinal pathogen, aerosols could, if inhaled, settle in the pharynx and later be swallowed. The aims of this study were to investigate the presence of norovirus GII bioaerosols during gastroenteritis outbreaks in healthcare facilities as well as studying the *in vitro* effects of aerosolization and air sampling on the noroviruses using murine norovirus as a surrogate.

Methods. A total of 48 air samples were collected during norovirus outbreaks in 8 healthcare facilities. Samples were taken 1 m away from each patient, in front of the patient's room and at the nurses' station. The resistance to aerosolization stress of murine norovirus MNV-1 bioaerosols was also tested *in vitro* using an aerosol chamber.

Results. Norovirus genomes were detected in 6/8 healthcare centers. The concentrations ranged from $1.35x10^1$ to $2.35x10^3$ genomes per m^3 in 47% of air samples. Norovirus MNV-1 preserved its infectivity and integrity during *in vitro* aerosol studies.

Conclusion. Norovirus genomes are frequently detected in the air of healthcare facilities during outbreaks, even outside patients' rooms. In addition, *in vitro* models suggest this virus may withstand aerosolization.

Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

INTRODUCTION

Noroviruses are non-enveloped, single-stranded RNA viruses, belonging to the Caliciviridae family. They are the most common cause of epidemic gastroenteritis, responsible for at least 50% of all gastroenteritis outbreaks worldwide [1]. They are a major cause of foodborne illnesses and one of the major pathogens responsible for nosocomial infections [2-4]. Gastroenteritis outbreaks mostly occur in facilities where hygiene is compromised and contact between infected patients and personnel is intense, such as hospitals and nursing homes [7]. In the United-States, norovirus infections represent 2 millions of outpatient visits, 414 000 emergency room visits, 56 000 -71 000 hospitalizations and up to 800 deaths each year [8]. Children, elderly, immunocompromised persons and people living/working in healthcare facilities are at higher risk of contracting the disease [5].

Noroviruses are highly contagious, with an infectious dose ranging from 18 to 2 800 particles, making their spread difficult to prevent [10]. A descriptive study performed in 2011-2012 to estimate the incidence of norovirus outbreaks in hospitals and nursing homes in Catalonia demonstrated the occurrence of norovirus to be very high and associated with significant mortality [11] and that even small amount of contamination can lead to a potential risk to public health [10, 12]. Multiple routes of infection transmission have been documented including: direct contact with an infected person and/or fecal matter and vomitus droplets, and contact with contaminated surfaces [5, 9]. Indirect evidence suggests that norovirus could be transmitted through the airborne route and this route of transmission has already been suggested in literature [13-16]. Nenonen *et al.* showed high nucleotide similarity between norovirus GII.4 strains present in the dust of rooms of patients infected by norovirus [17]. However, norovirus has never

Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

been detected in the air of hospitals outside patients' rooms and the infectious potential of airborne noroviruses has never been studied since this virus was, until very recently, not culturable [18]. Assessing the norovirus' capacity to withstand the stress associated with aerosolization is essential to investigate its potential for airborne dissemination. Several models have been developed to assess the persistence of norovirus infectivity in the environment and surrogates for human noroviruses are used: feline calcivirus, bacteriophages MS2 and murine norovirus (MNV) [12]. Murine norovirus (MNV-1) shares similar genetic and structural features with the human norovirus therefore is a culturable surrogate [19] and used to study the resistance to environmental stress of human norovirus [12].

A virus is generally considered infective if its integrity is documented. In recent years, a new technique, propidium monoazide (PMA), has been developed to assess the structural integrity of microorganisms and differentiate intact and membrane compromised microorganisms. It is a DNA/RNA intercalating dye with a photo-inducible azide group, which allows covalently cross-links with RNA after an exposure to bright light. In virology studies, PMA only penetrates viruses with damaged capsid and can hence differentiate intact from compromised virions that will not be amplified by PCR. This method was previously used to determine the integrity of norovirus particles [20].

The general aim of this study was to investigate the potential for airborne transmission of human norovirus. To achieve this goal, two distinct and complementary objectives were designed: 1) quantify the presence of norovirus GII in air samples during gastroenteritis outbreaks in healthcare facilities and 2) study the virus' resistance to aerosolization by assessing its integrity when subjected to *in vitro* aerosolization stress using murine norovirus as surrogate. Integrity

Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

preservation was determined by culture and PMA. The use of PMA qPCR method as an indicator of murine norovirus integrity was also validated.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Field study

Sampling human norovirus in health-care facilities

Air sampling was performed in 8 healthcare facilities of the Quebec City area (Canada) when viral gastroenteritis outbreaks occurred. Norovirus was established as the causal agent of the gastroenteritis outbreaks (PCR) by the public health laboratory of the Quebec Province (LSPQ). Air samples were taken in 3 distinct locations on patients wards: (1) inside the room of patients with gastroenteritis symptoms (<24h); (2) in the hallways or the common room outside of the rooms of patients with symptoms; and (3) at the nurses' station. A total of 48 air samples were collected: 26 from patient rooms, 16 from hallways/common areas and 6 from nurse's stations. Air samples were taken with the Coriolis µ® (Bertin Technologies, St-Berthely, France) set at 200 L/min for 10 minutes (sampler D50 <0,5µm) and 15 mL of phosphate buffered solution (PBS) was used for fluid collection (Lonza, Bâle, Switzerland). Samples were concentrated on Amicon Ultra-15 centrifugal filter unit (porosity of 50 kDa (Millipore, Billerica, MA)) to a final volume of 400 µl. Concentrated air samples were spiked with 1 µl of a MS2 bacteriophage suspension (10^6 ge/ml) as an internal control for RNA extraction and qPCR.

RNA isolation of human norovirus

Viral RNA was isolated using the MagMax® Viral RNA Isolation Kit (Life Technologies, Carlsbad, CA). Total RNA was eluted and immediately transcribed into complementary DNA or frozen at -80ºC until RT-PCR was performed.

Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

In vitro experiments

Murine norovirus and cells

MNV-1 and macrophages RAW 264.7 cells were cultivated as mentioned by Wobus *et al*., in presence of macrophages RAW 264.7 in DMEM (Cellgro, Mediatech, Herndon, Virginia, United States) [21]. An initial stock at 10^7 PFU/ml was prepared, divided into subsamples (70 ml of MNV-1 at 10^7 PFU/ml) for each experiment and then kept at -80ºC.

MNV-1 aerosolization

Aerosolization was performed in an aerosol chamber (GenaMini, SCL Medtech Inc., Montreal, Canada). Sixty-five mL of MNV-1 (10^7 PFU/ml) in DMEM were nebulized (Single-Jet Atomizer, model 9302, TSI Inc., Shoreview, MN) at a rate of 3 L/min using HEPA filtered air. The average liquid flow rate of the nebulizer was of 0.18 ± 0.2 mL per min. Aerosols were dried through a desiccator (EMD Chemicals Inc., Gibbstown, NJ,) allowing the formation of droplet nuclei before entering the chamber and were diluted with HEPA-filtered dry air at a rate of 23 L/min [22]. An Aerodynamic Particle Sizer (APS; model 3321, TSI Inc.) was used to monitor particle size distribution and concentration during aerosol sampling. Temperature and relative humidity were also measured.

Aerosols sampling

Air samples were collected using National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) 2-stage cyclone aerosol sampler prototype (NIOSH-251, CDC/NIOSH, Morgantown, WV) [23, 24] for 25 min at 10 L/min then particles were eluted from the first stage and from the filter using 4 ml PBS and from the second stage with 1 ml PBS using an orbital shaker (WIS Biomed, San

Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

Mateo, CA) for 15 min at room temperature. All eluents were pooled together. Aerosolization experiments were performed five times. Viral culture, RNA extraction and cDNA synthesis were performed the same day as the aerosolization experiments took place.

Quantification by plaque assay

The plaque assays were performed as previously described by Gonzalez-Hernandez *et al.* [25] except that plaques were visualized by crystal violet staining after fixation with formaldehyde. Each plaque assay had one negative control well.

RNA isolation of murine norovirus

Total viral RNA was extracted using the QIAamp viral RNA Mini kit (Qiagen, Mississauga, Ontario, Canada). Total RNA was eluted in 80 µl of elution buffer, supplied with the kit.

Viral genome quantification

Viral genomes cDNA synthesis

RNA was converted to cDNA using the iScript ™ cDNA Synthesis Kit (BioRad, Hercules, CA), following manufacturer instructions.

Quantification of viruses by qPCR

Separate reactions were performed for the detection of MS2 (internal control), human norovirus GII from field air samples and MNV-1 from *in vitro* study air samples. MS2 genomes were detected using qPCR described by [22]. Every sample was positive for MS2, which shows that the RNA extraction and cDNA synthesis were efficient.

Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

Detection of norovirus GII cDNA and MNV-1 was done using qPCR as described by Kageyama *et al*. [26] and Girard *et al.* [27] respectively. Quantification was performed using a standard curve of a ten-fold dilution series of MNV-1 plasmid DNA preparation or norovirus GII plasmid DNA preparation [27]. Serial 10-fold dilutions from 10^1 to 10^7 molecules per reaction tube were used. The curve was prepared using the pGC™ Blue Cloning & amplification kits (Lucigen, Middleton, WI). The DNA plasmids were purified using the Qiagen plasmid mini kit and were quantified with a NanoDrop™ 2000 spectrophotometer (Thermo scientific, Waltham, MA).

PMA- qPCR

This method, previously used with norovirus by Parshionikar *et al.* [20] allows quantification of virus with an intact capsid. Propidium monoazide (PMA, Biotium Inc., Hayward, CA, USA) was dissolved in 20% dimethyl sulfoxide to create a 5 mM stock solution and stored at -20°C in the dark. 4.2 µl of PMA™ was added to 140 µl of air samples aliquots to a final concentration 150 µM in light-transparent 1.5 ml tubes (Fisher Scientific Co., Ottawa, ON). Following an incubation period of 5 min in the dark with occasional mixing, samples were exposed to light for 10 min using a PMA-Lite LED Photolysis Device (a long-lasting LED Lights with 465-475 nm emission for PMA™ activation; Biotium Inc.). Viral RNA extraction was performed as mentioned previously.

RESULTS

Field study

Norovirus GII genomes were detected in air samples from six of the eight healthcare facilities (75%) and in 23/48 air samples. Norovirus RNA was detected in fourteen symptomatic patient's

Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

rooms out of twenty-six (54%), six hallways out of sixteen (38%) and three nurse stations out of six (50%). Positive samples concentrations ranged from $1.35x10^1$ to $2.35x10^3$ genomes per m^3 (Table 1).

***In vitro* experiments**

For all experiments, the aerosols median mass aerodynamic diameter in the GenaMini chamber ranged from 0.89 to 1.08 µm, and the total particles concentration was from $2.42x10^4$ to $5.37x10^4$ particles per cm^3. The RH and temperature inside the chamber fluctuated between 5.9 ± 1.9% and 24.1 ± 0.9°C. The concentration of infectious viruses, total genomes and intact viruses into the nebulizer of the aerosol chamber did not vary significantly between the beginning and the end of the aerosolization process (Figure 1). The concentrations of norovirus MNV-1 in the nebulizer were $1x10^7$ infectious virus/ml (Figure 1A), $2\text{-}4x10^9$ intact viruses/ml (Figure 1C), and $6\text{-}8x10^{10}$ genomes/ml (Figure 1B) as determined by plaque assay, qPCR and PMA-qPCR, respectively.

Using PMA qPCR, it has been possible to determine the relative percentage of intact norovirus MNV-1 within the NIOSH-251. Figure 2 shows that the NIOSH-251 recovered more than 89% intact viruses. The cultivable-to-genome ratio in the nebuliser and the sampler was calculated and the result was converted into a percentage to determine the norovirus resistance to aerosolization and air sampling. The relative percentage of norovirus MNV-1 infectivity varied from 76% to 86%. The NIOSH-251 was efficient in preserving MNV-1 infectivity (Figure 2).

Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

DISCUSSION

This study provides original quantitative data regarding the airborne dissemination of norovirus in healthcare facilities and documents for the first time widespread dissemination of human norovirus GII in the air of healthcare facilities during gastroenteritis outbreaks. The lack of positive norovirus detection does not necessarily mean there was no human norovirus in the air but simply that the detection limit of the test was reached. The air from patient rooms may contain up to 2000 genomes/m^3, and considering that an average human breaths approximately 6 liters of air per minute, a healthcare worker could inhale up to 60 copies of human norovirus during a 5-minute stay in the room of a symptomatic patient. For some individuals, this quantity could be sufficient to cause the disease.

Many processes can lead to the creation of norovirus aerosols and several sources can be identified such as resuspension from fomites [28-32], flushing toilets [33, 34], vomit droplets [16] and healthcare workers (serving as vector for aerosolized particles) [3]. All of these sources need to be considered to avoid epidemics. Overall, the detection of significant concentrations of human norovirus genomes in the air of corridors and nursing stations suggests that they can remain suspended in the air for prolonged periods of time. This provides additional support to the hypothesis that human norovirus may be an airborne disease as suspected by Sawyer *et al*. [35]. Although norovirus is an intestinal pathogen, noroviruses could be transmitted through the airborne route and subsequently could, if inhaled, settle in the pharynx and later be swallowed.

Hence, *in vitro* studies were performed to evaluate the preservation of the aerosolized norovirus infectious potential using MNV-1 as a surrogate and a NIOSH-251 air sampler. Noroviruses

Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

could withstand aerosolization with no significant loss of infectivity. The difference between the concentration of infectious viruses and intact viruses might be explained by the presence of damaged receptors, making their attachment impossible, but also by the fact that aggregated viruses can only be detected as a single plaque-forming unit. Since culture methods for human norovirus were only recently published (after this study was completed), we suggest that NIOSH-251 sampler could be used in the field to evaluate culturability and infectivity of airborne human viruses. These results may explain in part the propensity of this virus to cause abrupt and widespread outbreaks in healthcare settings and confined environments such as aircrafts [36] and cruise ships [37]. A few years ago, Marks *et al.* also raised the possibility of an airborne spread of norovirus following infections by inhalation in hotels, restaurants and schools [14, 15].

The findings presented in this report could have an important impact on the infection control practices and recommendations for managing norovirus outbreaks in healthcare facilities. They suggest that air may be an important but yet underappreciated mode of transmission of norovirus and may explain in part the well-known difficulty of controlling norovirus outbreaks. Currently, the US Centers for Diseases Control recommends the implementation of contact precautions only when caring for patients with norovirus gastroenteritis [38]. This recommendation is based on the belief that norovirus are unlikely to remain viable on air currents that travel long distances. There is a need for identifying the optimal infection prevention measures required to ensure a safe hospital environment; for example, the use of full airborne precautions (including the use of respirators, the closing of patient rooms' doors and the use of negative pressure rooms) could help prevent transmission of this troublesome virus.

Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

CONCLUSION

This study detected high concentrations of infectious norovirus GII in the air of healthcare facilities during outbreaks. *In vitro* models suggest this virus may withstand aerosolization, supporting a probable mode of transmission for norovirus.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

We are thankful to "La table régionale de prévention des infections nosocomiales de la région 03" for having notified us when an outbreak occurred. We thank Dr. MC Roy and Dr. J Villeneuve for assisting us in recruiting centers. We also thank all patients who participated at this study. We acknowledge L Trudel for critical reading of this manuscript and JE Marcoux for English revision.

NOTES

Financial support: This work was supported by the Institut de Recherche Robert-Sauvé en Santé et en Sécurité du Travail (Grant # 099-9060) and the National Sciences and Engineering Council of Canada (Grant # RGPIN-2014-059000). C.D. is a FRSQ senior scholar and a member of the FRSQ Respiratory Health Network. Y.L. is a FRSQ-funded clinical research scholar.

Potential conflict of interest: All authors have no potential conflicts of interest; they both have submitted the ICMJE Form for Disclosure of Potential Conflicts of Interest. Conflicts that the editors consider relevant to the content of the manuscript have been disclosed.

Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

REFERENCES

1. Hall A, Lopman B, Park G, Yen C, Gregoricus N, Parashar U. Updated norovirus outbreak management and disease prevention guidelines. MMWR Recomm Rep **2011**; 60: 1-18.
2. Barclay L, Park GW, Vega E, et al. Infection control for norovirus. Clinical microbiology and infection : the official publication of the European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases **2014**.
3. Huttunen R, Syrjanen J. Healthcare workers as vectors of infectious diseases. European journal of clinical microbiology & infectious diseases : official publication of the European Society of Clinical Microbiology **2014**.
4. Lai CC, Wang YH, Wu CY, Hung CH, Jiang DD, Wu FT. A norovirus outbreak in a nursing home: norovirus shedding time associated with age. Journal of clinical virology : the official publication of the Pan American Society for Clinical Virology **2013**; 56(2): 96-101.
5. Pothier P, Kaiser L. Norovirus disease today. Clinical microbiology and infection : the official publication of the European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases **2014**.
6. Rockx B, De Wit M, Vennema H, et al. Natural history of human calicivirus infection: a prospective cohort study. Clinical infectious diseases : an official publication of the Infectious Diseases Society of America **2002**; 35(3): 246-53.
7. Iturriza-Gomara M, Lopman B. Norovirus in healthcare settings. Current opinion in infectious diseases **2014**; 27(5): 437-43.

Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

8. Hall AJ, Lopman BA, Payne DC, et al. Norovirus disease in the United States. Emerging infectious diseases **2013**; 19(8): 1198-205.

9. Vinje J. Advances in Laboratory Methods for Detection and Typing of Norovirus. Journal of clinical microbiology **2014**.

10. Debbink K, Lindesmith LC, Baric RS. The state of norovirus vaccines. Clinical infectious diseases : an official publication of the Infectious Diseases Society of America **2014**; 58(12): 1746-52.

11. Godoy P, Ferrrus G, Torner N, et al. High incidence of norovirus GII.4 outbreaks in hospitals and nursing homes in Catalonia (Spain), 2010-2011. Epidemiology and infection **2014**: 1-9.

12. Hirneisen KA, Kniel KE. Comparing human norovirus surrogates: murine norovirus and Tulane virus. Journal of food protection **2013**; 76(1): 139-43.

13. Chadwick PR, McCann R. Transmission of a small round structured virus by vomiting during a hospital outbreak of gastroenteritis. The Journal of hospital infection **1994**; 26(4): 251-9.

14. Marks PJ, Vipond IB, Carlisle D, Deakin D, Fey RE, Caul EO. Evidence for airborne transmission of Norwalk-like virus (NLV) in a hotel restaurant. Epidemiology and infection **2000**; 124(3): 481-7.

15. Marks PJ, Vipond IB, Regan FM, Wedgwood K, Fey RE, Caul EO. A school outbreak of Norwalk-like virus: evidence for airborne transmission. Epidemiology and infection **2003**; 131(1): 727-36.

16. La Rosa G, Fratini M, Della Libera S, Iaconelli M, Muscillo M. Viral infections acquired indoors through airborne, droplet or contact transmission. Ann Ist Super Sanità **2013**; 49(2): 124-32.

Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

17. Nenonen NP, Hannoun C, Svensson L, et al. Norovirus GII.4 Detection in Environmental Samples from Patient Rooms during Nosocomial Outbreaks. Journal of clinical microbiology **2014**; 52(7): 2352-8.

18. Jones MK, Watanabe M, Zhu S, et al. Enteric bacteria promote human and mouse norovirus infection of B cells. Science **2014**; 346(6210): 755-9.

19. Wobus CE, Thackray LB, Virgin HWt. Murine norovirus: a model system to study norovirus biology and pathogenesis. Journal of virology **2006**; 80(11): 5104-12.

20. Parshionikar S, Laseke I, Fout GS. Use of propidium monoazide in reverse transcriptase PCR to distinguish between infectious and noninfectious enteric viruses in water samples. Applied and environmental microbiology **2010**; 76(13): 4318-26.

21. Wobus CE, Karst SM, Thackray LB, et al. Replication of Norovirus in cell culture reveals a tropism for dendritic cells and macrophages. PLoS biology **2004**; 2(12): e432.

22. Gendron L, Verreault D, Veillette M, Moineau S, Duchaine C. Evaluation of filters for the sampling and quantification of RNA phage aerosols. Aerosol Science and Technology **2010**; 44: 893-901.

23. Lindsley WG, Blachere FM, Davis KA, et al. Distribution of airborne influenza virus and respiratory syncytial virus in an urgent care medical clinic. Clinical infectious diseases : an official publication of the Infectious Diseases Society of America **2010**; 50(5): 693-8.

24. Turgeon N, Toulouse MJ, Martel B, Moineau S, Duchaine C. Comparison of five bacteriophages as models for viral aerosol studies. Applied and environmental microbiology **2014**; 80(14): 4242-50.

25. Gonzalez-Hernandez MB, Bragazzi Cunha J, Wobus CE. Plaque assay for murine norovirus. Journal of visualized experiments : JoVE **2012**; (66): e4297.

Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

26. Kageyama T, Kojima S, Shinohara M, et al. Broadly reactive and highly sensitive assay for Norwalk-like viruses based on real-time quantitative reverse transcription-PCR. Journal of clinical microbiology **2003**; 41(4): 1548-57.

27. Girard M, Ngazoa S, Mattison K, Jean J. Attachment of noroviruses to stainless steel and their inactivation, using household disinfectants. Journal of food protection **2010**; 73(2): 400-4.

28. Atmar RL, Opekun AR, Gilger MA, et al. Norwalk virus shedding after experimental human infection. Emerging infectious diseases **2008**; 14(10): 1553-7.

29. Chan MC, Sung JJ, Lam RK, et al. Faecal viral load and norovirus-associated gastroenteritis. Emerging infectious diseases **2006**; 12(8): 1278-80.

30. Davis C, Vally H, Bell R, Sheehan F, Beard F. Viral gastrointestinal outbreaks in residential care facilities: an examination of the value of public health unit involvement. Australian and New Zealand journal of public health **2014**; 38(2): 177-83.

31. Glass RI, Parashar UD, Estes MK. Norovirus gastroenteritis. The New England journal of medicine **2009**; 361(18): 1776-85.

32. Lopman B, Gastanaduy P, Park GW, Hall AJ, Parashar UD, Vinje J. Environmental transmission of norovirus gastroenteritis. Current opinion in virology **2012**; 2(1): 96-102.

33. Verani M, Bigazzi R, Carducci A. Viral contamination of aerosol and surfaces through toilet use in health care and other settings. American journal of infection control **2014**; 42(7): 758-62.

34. Johnson DL, Mead KR, Lynch RA, Hirst DV. Lifting the lid on toilet plume aerosol: a literature review with suggestions for future research. American journal of infection control **2013**; 41(3): 254-8.

Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

35. Sawyer LA, Murphy JJ, Kaplan JE, et al. 25- to 30-nm virus particle associated with a hospital outbreak of acute gastroenteritis with evidence for airborne transmission. American journal of epidemiology **1988**; 127(6): 1261-71.

36. Thornley CN, Emslie NA, Sprott TW, Greening GE, Rapana JP. Recurring norovirus transmission on an airplane. Clinical infectious diseases : an official publication of the Infectious Diseases Society of America **2011**; 53(6): 515-20.

37. Bert F, Scaioli G, Gualano MR, et al. Norovirus Outbreaks on Commercial Cruise Ships: A Systematic Review and New Targets for the Public Health Agenda. Food and environmental virology **2014**.

38. Siegel JD, Rhinehart E, Jackson M, Chiarello L, Health Care Infection Control Practices Advisory C. 2007 Guideline for Isolation Precautions: Preventing Transmission of Infectious Agents in Health Care Settings. American journal of infection control **2007**; 35(10 Suppl 2): S65-164.

Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

TABLE 1: Detection and concentration of norovirus GII RNA recovered from the air in patient rooms, hallways and nursing stations during 8 confirmed norovirus outbreaks, Quebec, 2012. Air samples were taken with the Coriolis µ® set at 200 L/min for 10 minutes.

Healthcare centers Location	**Number of positive sample detected in the air**	**Range of Norovirus GII (Genome/m^3)**
Patient room	14/26	$1.46x10^1 – 2.35x10^3$
Nurse station	3/6	$1.35x10^1 – 1.22x10^2$
Hallway/Common area	6/16	$1.54x10^1 – 5.43x10^2$

Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

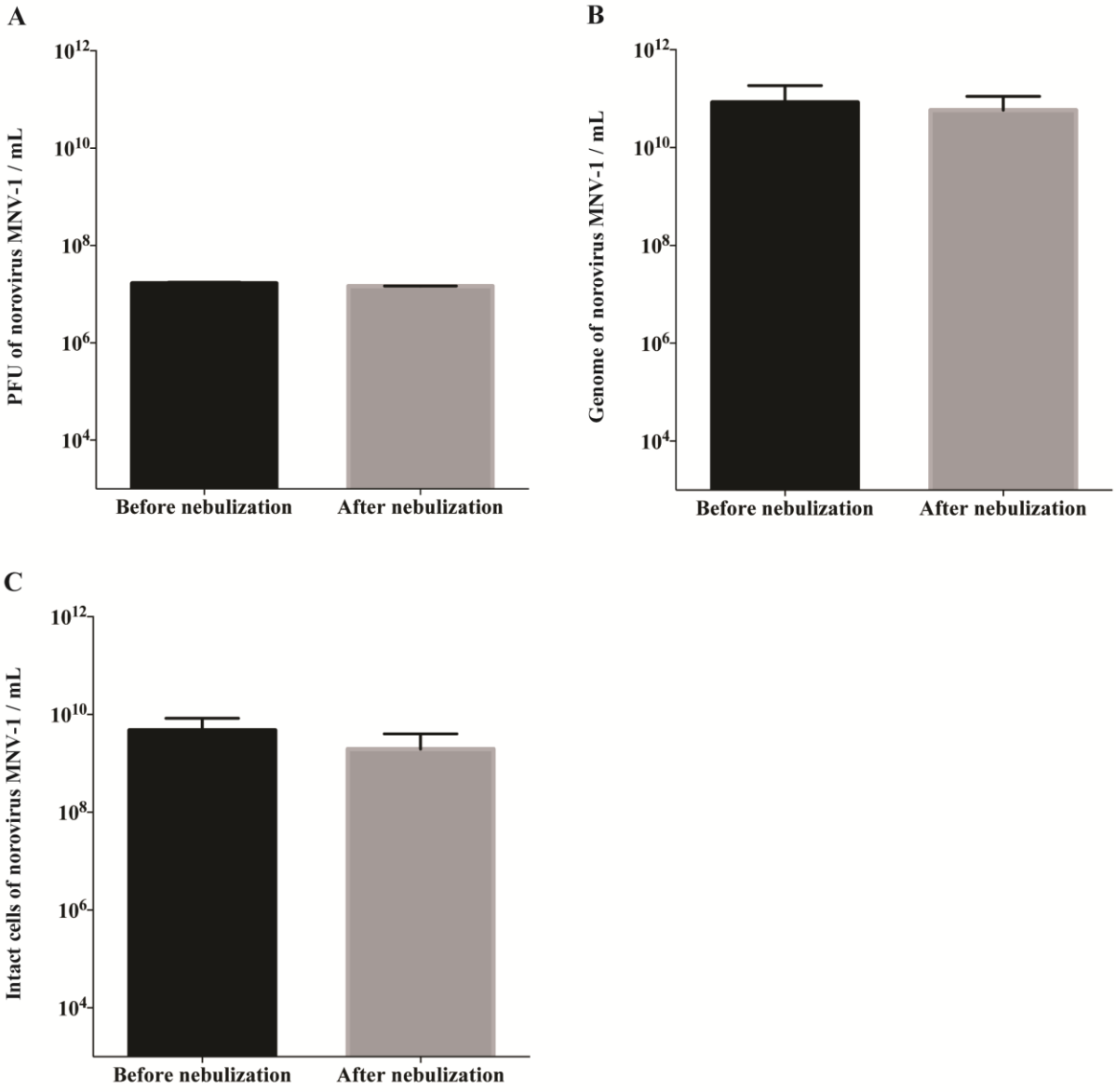
FIGURE LEGENDS

Figure 1: MNV-1 concentration in the nebulizer at the beginning (black bar) and at the end (grey bar) of the aerosolization. 2A: Infectious MNV-1 concentration, 2B: MNV-1 genome concentration, 2C: concentration of MNV-1 with intact viral capsid. There is no significant difference between virus concentration at the beginning and at the end of the aerosolization.

Figure 2: Relative percentage on MNV-1 with intact capsid after aerosolization and sampling with the NIOSH-251 (black round) as determined using PMA-qPCR assay. Relative MNV-1 infectious percentage after aerosolization and sampling with the NIOSH-251 (black triangle). Horizontal bars represent the mean of experiments with standard deviation.

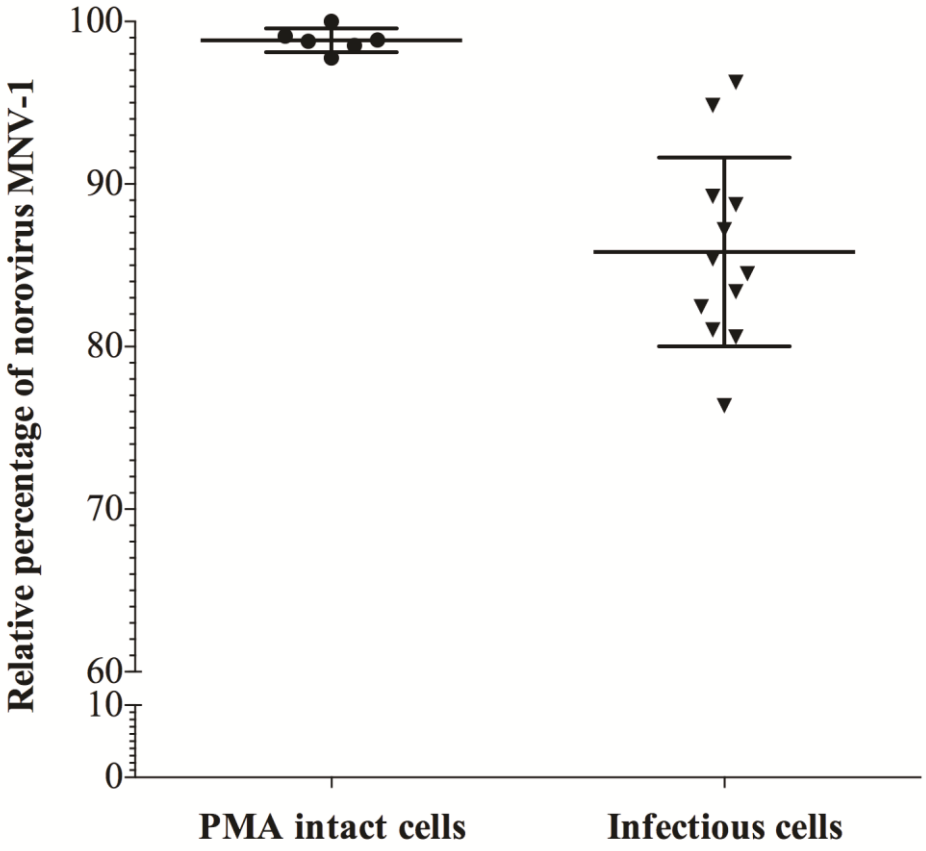
Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015



Accep

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015



Accepted Manuscript

Downloaded from http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/ at D H Hill Library - Acquis Dept S on May 4, 2015

PLOS ONE

RESEARCH ARTICLE

Aerosolization of a Human Norovirus Surrogate, Bacteriophage MS2, during Simulated Vomiting

Grace Tung-Thompson[1¶], Dominic A. Libera[2¶], Kenneth L. Koch[3], Francis L. de los Reyes, III[2‡*], Lee-Ann Jaykus[1‡]

1 Department of Food, Bioprocessing and Nutrition Sciences, North Carolina State University, Raleigh, North Carolina, United States of America, **2** Department of Civil, Construction and Environmental Engineering, North Carolina State University, Raleigh, North Carolina, United States of America, **3** Section on Gastroenterology, Wake Forest University School of Medicine, Winston-Salem, North Carolina 27157, United States of America

‡ These authors are faculty members who supervised the work.
¶ These authors were graduate students who performed the experiments.
* fldelosr@ncsu.edu

CrossMark
click for updates

OPEN ACCESS

Citation: Tung-Thompson G, Libera DA, Koch KL, de los Reyes FL, III, Jaykus L-A (2015) Aerosolization of a Human Norovirus Surrogate, Bacteriophage MS2, during Simulated Vomiting. PLoS ONE 10(8): e0134277. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0134277

Editor: Chris T. Bauch, University of Waterloo, CANADA

Received: February 20, 2015

Accepted: June 21, 2015

Published: August 19, 2015

Copyright: © 2015 Tung-Thompson et al. This is an open access article distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original author and source are credited.

Data Availability Statement: All relevant data are within the paper and its Supporting Information files.

Funding: This project was supported by the USDA-CSREES National Integrated Food Safety Initiative (NIFSI) project #2011-51110-31020 (http://www.nifa.usda.gov/nea/food/in_focus/safety_if_national.html). Partial support was also provided by Agriculture and Food Research Initiative Competitive Grant no. 2011-68003-30395 from the USDA National Institute of Food and Agriculture (http://www.nifa.usda.gov/funding/rfas/afri.html). The funders had no role in study design, data collection and analysis, decision to publish, or preparation of this manuscript.

Abstract

Human noroviruses (NoV) are the leading cause of acute gastroenteritis worldwide. Epidemiological studies of outbreaks have suggested that vomiting facilitates transmission of human NoV, but there have been no laboratory-based studies characterizing the degree of NoV release during a vomiting event. The purpose of this work was to demonstrate that virus aerosolization occurs in a simulated vomiting event, and to estimate the amount of virus that is released in those aerosols. A simulated vomiting device was constructed at one-quarter scale of the human body following similitude principles. Simulated vomitus matrices at low (6.24 mPa*s) and high (177.5 mPa*s) viscosities were inoculated with low (10^8 PFU/mL) and high (10^{10} PFU/mL) concentrations of bacteriophage MS2 and placed in the artificial "stomach" of the device, which was then subjected to scaled physiologically relevant pressures associated with vomiting. Bio aerosols were captured using an SKC Biosampler. In low viscosity artificial vomitus, there were notable differences between recovered aerosolized MS2 as a function of pressure (i.e., greater aerosolization with increased pressure), although this was not always statistically significant. This relationship disappeared when using high viscosity simulated vomitus. The amount of MS2 aerosolized as a percent of total virus "vomited" ranged from 7.2×10^{-5} to 2.67×10^{-2} (which corresponded to a range of 36 to 13,350 PFU total). To our knowledge, this is the first study to document and measure aerosolization of a NoV surrogate in a similitude-based physical model. This has implications for better understanding the transmission dynamics of human NoV and for risk modeling purposes, both of which can help in designing effective infection control measures.

Competing Interests: The authors have declared that no competing interests exist.

Introduction

There are 21 million cases of human norovirus (NoV) infection in the U.S. each year, and this virus genus is now recognized as the leading cause of outbreaks of acute gastroenteritis. According to CDC National Outbreak Reporting Systems (NORS) data for 2009–2010, NoV are responsible for 68% of reported enteric disease outbreaks and 78% of illnesses. They have also been associated with 46% of hospitalizations and 86% of deaths associated with these enteric disease outbreaks. The majority of these outbreaks occur in healthcare facilities (64%), but about 15% occur in association with food service establishments (e.g., restaurants and banquet facilities) [1]. In fact, NoV have been associated for over 50% of all foodborne disease outbreaks [2].

Human NoV can be transmitted by a variety of means. The most widely recognized is the fecal-oral route, which is particularly relevant to contamination of food. However, the virus is also released during projectile vomiting, the hallmark symptom of NoV illness. It is estimated that as many as 30 million virus particles are released in a single episode of vomiting [3,4]. When combined with their low infectious dose (20–1300 particles) [5,6] it is likely that vomiting facilitates NoV transmission. In fact, there have been many outbreaks occurring in hotels, schools, aircraft, concert halls, and cruise ships for which vomiting has been implicated as having a role in transmission [7–11].

Epidemiological evidence from outbreaks suggests that projectile vomiting produces aerosols that contain human NoV [12,13]. Aerosolization of virus during vomiting could potentially extend the spread of virus, result in contamination of surfaces and other fomites, and increase the duration of exposure if viruses remain airborne. Air currents could further disperse aerosolized virus, making contamination even more widespread [4].

Aside from epidemiological studies, the relative importance of aerosol formation in the transmission of human NoV through vomiting is largely unknown. However, there have been studies on aerosolization of influenza virus, usually in association with the physical act of coughing or sneezing. The aerosolization of pathogens by sneezing, coughing, talking, or exhaling depends on many factors such as the flow rate of air suspending the pathogens, evaporation, and the velocity of coughing or sneezing [14,15]. The likelihood of transmission via aerosols is also influenced by the size of the particles, which depends on evaporation, virus aggregation, and properties of the suspending matrix [16].

There are many challenges that hinder work with human NoV, not the least of which is that they cannot be cultivated *in vitro*, nor is there an animal model for their propagation. Consequently, surrogate viruses that are morphologically similar, but cultivable, are often used in studies to mimic human NoV behavior. The male-specific bacteriophage MS2 is one such surrogate that resembles human NoV in that it has a positive sense single stranded RNA genome, icosahedral capsid symmetry, and is within the same size range [17,18]. Bacteriophage MS2 is easily cultivated in the laboratory to high titers (~10^{11} plaque forming units (PFU)/mL). As a bacteriophage, it is also non-pathogenic to humans or animals and is commonly used in aerosolization studies as a surrogate for pathogenic viruses [19].

The purpose of this study was to demonstrate that virus aerosolization occurs in a simulated vomiting event, and to estimate the amount of virus that is released in those aerosols. The work was performed in two parts: (i) creation of a laboratory physical model to simulate human vomiting; and (ii) using that model to characterize the degree of virus aerosolization under various conditions of volume and pressure. The human NoV surrogate MS2 was used in the simulated vomiting experiments.

Materials and Methods

Physiological parameters used in vomiting device

To better understand the physiology of vomiting and potential effects on aerosolization, and in the absence of data in the literature, an expert in gastroenterology (author KLK) provided advice to aid in estimating values for key design features. There were a number of parameters in which this advice was useful. The first was volume of vomitus, which varies depending on a person's height, weight, and diet consumed prior to a vomiting episode. Considering these variations, 800 mL of vomitus in a single vomiting episode was estimated to be a maximum volume. It was assumed to be unlikely that a person would expel less than 50 mL, as this volume might be considered a "dry heave." The 800 mL estimated vomitus volume was used exclusively in this study to allow the use of a manageable scaled down volume (see Simulated Vomiting Experiments).

The second variable for expert consideration was vomitus viscosity, which depends upon the mix of solid, semi-solid, and liquefied (triturated) foods present in the stomach prior to the vomiting episode. Vomitus with high solids contents would be thick with suspended food particles; pre-gelatinized starch was chosen as a model for high solids content vomitus. Vomitus with low solids contents would be very thin and watery; artificial saliva was used as a model for low solids content vomitus.

It was pointed out that air is present in the gastric fundus, the portion of the stomach immediately distal to the lower esophageal sphincter (LES). The fundic air volume likely contributes to the aerosolization of vomitus and was estimated to be in the range of 50–200 mL. Further, the LES is normally contracted to prevent reflux of gastric content into the esophagus. The normal sphincter pressure ranges from 13 mmHg to 43 mmHg. Increases in intragastric pressure and reverse peristalsis in the gastric antrum and corpus result in abrupt relaxation of the lower esophageal sphincter pressure during vomiting [20]. The upper esophageal sphincter also relaxes during vomiting. Greater intra-abdominal and intra-gastric pressures during vomiting result in more vigorous expulsion of gastric contents and result in the so-called "projectile" vomiting.

Finally, during vomiting the neck is flexed with the mouth pointed toward the ground, a posture that limits the potential for aspiration of vomitus. It was assumed that reproduction of the exact size and shape of the stomach was not necessary in model design as long as scaled lengths and diameters of the esophagus and mouth were used, as well as physiologically relevant pressures of the stomach and esophagus.

Model Construction

The simulated vomiting device was constructed based on the concept of similitude, which allows a scaled prototype to behave similarly to the full-scale phenomenon being simulated. In this case, the device was designed to function similarly to the full-scale human upper gastrointestinal tract but created at one-quarter scale. Achieving similitude in an engineered model is based on three types of similarity to the full-scale application: geometric, kinematic, and dynamic [21]. Having geometric similarity means that the model and prototype must have the same shape, and that all of the linear dimensions of the model must be related to corresponding dimensions in the prototype by the same scaling factor [21]. To achieve kinematic similarity, velocities at corresponding points in the model must have the same direction and differ by the same constant scale factor as the prototype [21]. Dynamic similarity means that the ratios of all the forces acting on the fluid particles are constant when comparing the model and the prototype. A list of all parameters, data upon which they are based [22–24], their assumptions, and

Table 1. Summary of Model Parameters, Assumptions, and Relevant Formulae used in Scaling the Simulated Vomiting Device.

	Human Dimension (cm)	Equation Used in Scaling	Machine Dimensions (cm)	Adjusted for Material Availability (cm)
Esophagus Length	25	1	6.35	-
Esophagus Diameter	2.5	1	0.63	-
Mouth Length	9.7	1	2.46	2.54
Mouth Diameter	5.72	1	1.45	1.27
Maximum Vomitus Volume Used	800	2	13.08	-
Minimum Vomitus Volume Used	200	2	3.27	-
Volume of Air in Stomach Used	200	2	3.27	-
Maximum Stomach Pressure	5.6	3	86.8	-
Average Stomach Pressure	1.6	3	24.8	-
Minimum Stomach Pressure	0.77	2	11.9	-
Equations:				
$(1)\ Machine\ Length = \frac{Human\ Length}{3.94}$ $(2)\ Machine\ Volume = \frac{Human\ Volume}{61.16}$ $(3)\ Machine\ Pressure = Human\ Pressure * 15.5$				

Assumptions:

(1) Flow through the human esophagus and machine esophagus was treated as flow through a smooth pipe.

(2) In some cases, the machine dimensions were rounded to the nearest available dimension offered by material manufacturers.

(3) The vomitus fluid inside the human body will be the same inside the vomiting machine; achieved by using surrogate vomitus with similar viscosities.

doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0134277.t001

relevant formulas are provided in Table 1. A detailed description of the calculations used for scale up is provided in the Supporting Information (S1 File).

Fig 1A shows a diagram of the device. A clear PVC tube (7.62 cm long) attached to two PVC caps, a solid PVC piston, and pressure gauge connected to a pump were designed to act as a surrogate stomach. A brass check valve in the center of one of the PVC caps prevented air from escaping when pressurizing the system. Connecting the stomach chamber to the surrogate esophagus is a ball valve representing the lower esophageal sphincter (LES); in the human body the LES abruptly relaxes in order for the vomitus to be ejected from the stomach. When the valve was opened, the PVC piston pushed the vomitus out of the stomach into the esophagus, represented as a 0.64 cm diameter tube that is 6.35 cm in length. The esophagus was attached to a 1.27 cm diameter tube, representing the mouth, with an expansion fitting. In the device set-up, a slight curve (flexion) was designed in the upper esophagus and "throat" to simulate the flexion of the neck during a vomiting episode. A pressure gauge was attached to the top of the PVC cap to monitor the pressure at the connection between the esophagus and stomach chamber. The ball valve, representing the LES pressure, was opened when the desired intragastric pressure was reached, allowing the PVC piston to eject the vomitus with some velocity out of the stomach and into the esophagus and mouth.

The vomitus containment chamber (Fig 1B) was a Plexiglas box with dimensions of 30.5 cm x 30.5 cm x 44.5 cm and a hinged lid The edges were sealed with weather proofing tape to ensure a tight seal and prevent aerosols from escaping the chamber. On one side of the chamber, the vomiting device was connected to the "vomiting device port", while on the other side, an SKC© Biosampler (SKC Inc., Eighty Four, PA) was connected to the "biosampler port". After a simulated vomiting incident, a vacuum pump was operated at a flow rate of 12.5 L/min to facilitate capture of aerosolized particles by the biosampler into 4 mL of phosphate buffered saline (PBS). Preliminary studies indicated that the average biosampler efficiency at capturing

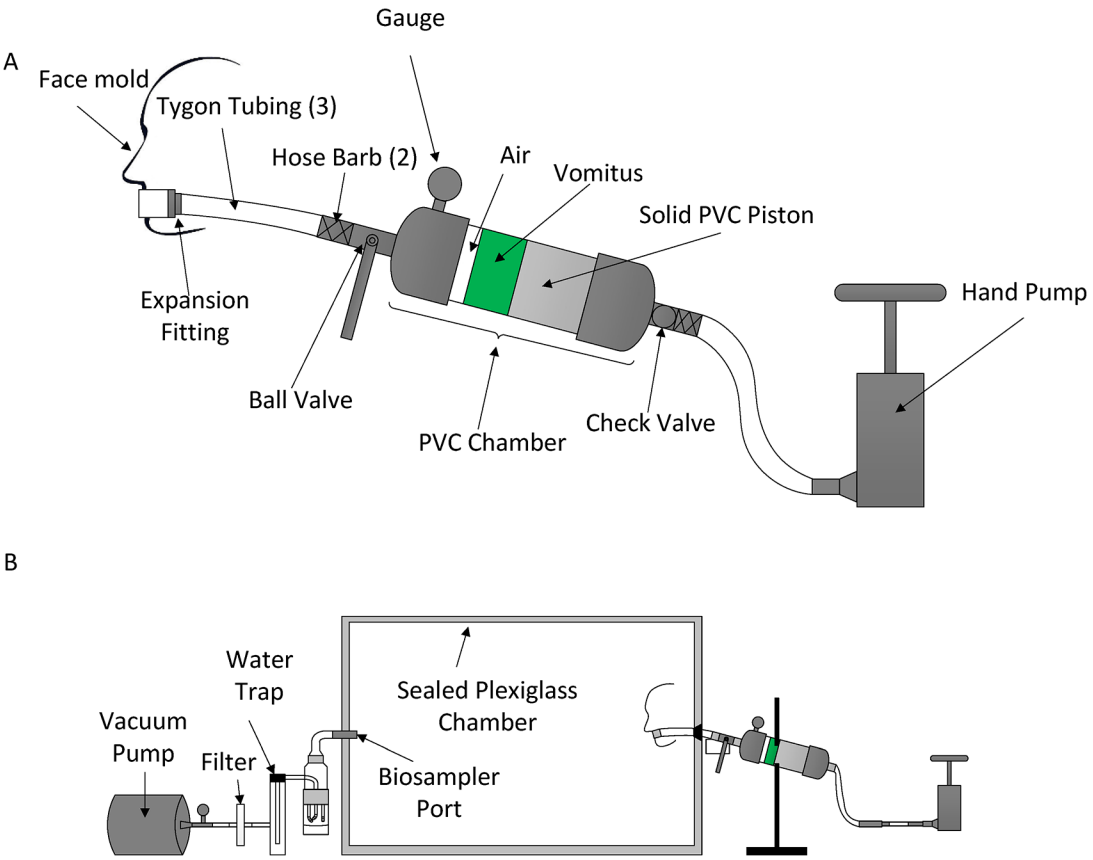


Fig 1. Schematic of Simulated Vomiting Device. (A) Diagram of the simulated vomiting device (B) Experimental set-up for capturing aerosolized virus.

doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0134277.g001

aerosolized MS2 was 8.5% (data not shown). The biosampler was run for 15 min (221 chamber volumes) after the simulated vomiting event. The entire set-up was further contained in a Biosafety level II hood.

Virus Propagation and Enumeration

Bacteriophage MS2 (ATCC 15597-B1) and its *Escherichia coli* C3000 host (ATCC B-15597) were purchased from the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC, Manassas, VA). To prepare MS2 stock solutions, the protocol described in NSF Standard 55 was used (double agar layer method, described below) [25]. After 10-fold serial dilutions of MS2 were plated, those plates showing complete lysis were flooded with 3 mL of tryptic soy broth (TSB) (Fisher Scientific, Pittsburgh, PA) and the soft agar layer was scraped off into a sterile 50 mL tube. The volume was increased to 40 mL with TSB and then 0.2 g EDTA (Sigma-Aldrich, St. Louis, MO) and 0.026 g lysozyme (Fisher Scientific) were added to each tube. The tubes were then incubated for 2 h at 37°C with shaking. The supernatant was recovered by centrifugation at 9,300 *x g* for 10 min followed by filter sterilization using a 0.22 μm filter (Nalgene, Rochester, NY). Aliquots of this were considered high titer MS2 stock (10^{10} PFU/mL). The low titer stock (10^{8} PFU/mL) was prepared by dilution. Stocks were aliquoted and stored at -80°C until use.

Enumeration of MS2 was also performed using the double agar layer method in accordance with the method of Su and D'Souza (2011) with minor modifications [26]. Briefly, the *E. coli* C3000 host was incubated for 4–6 h with gentle shaking (100 RPM, 37°C, Excella E24

Incubator, New Brunswick Scientific/Eppendorf, Enfield, CT). Simultaneously, 8 mL tubes of 0.6% tryptic soy agar (TSA) (Fisher Scientific) were melted and tempered in a 42°C water bath. Previously prepared petri dishes (Fisher Scientific) containing 1.2% TSA were allowed to warm to room temperature. Then, 10-fold serial dilutions of MS2 (dilutions to achieve countable plates were as high as 10^{-10} for high titer MS2, 10^{-8} for low titer MS2) were prepared. A volume of 0.7 mL of each dilution was added to the tempered 8 mL TSA tube after which 0.3 mL of *E. coli* solution was added, the suspension quickly vortexed and poured on top of the 1.2% TSA plates. Duplicates were done for each dilution. Upon solidification, the plates were inverted, incubated overnight at 37°C and then plaques were counted. Counts were expressed as plaque forming units per milliliter (PFU/mL).

Simulated Vomiting Experiments

Vomitus solutions consisted of MS2 bacteriophage at high (10^{10} PFU/mL) and low (10^{8} PFU/mL) titer were adjusted to high or low viscosity. To prepare the MS2 low viscosity solution (0.1% carboxymethylcellulose (CMC)), 15 mL of MS2 stock was mixed with 0.15 g of high viscosity CMC powder (pre-hydrated Ticalose CMC 6000 powder; Tic Gums, White Marsh, MD). This was used to simulate artificial saliva with a viscosity of 6.24 mPa*s [27]. For the high viscosity vomitus solution (similar to that of egg yolk), a solution of 25% pre-gelatinized starch (PS) was used. To prepare this, 3.75 g of PS (Vanilla flavor Instant pudding, Jell-O, Glenview, IL) was mixed with 15 mL of MS2 stock. Instant pudding was chosen after consultation with Dr. Tyre Lanier (Department of Food, Bioprocessing and Nutrition Sciences, NCSU) because it was easily attainable and did not affect MS2 viability (data not shown). The solution of PS had a viscosity of 177.5 mPa*s. Solutions exceeding this viscosity were too thick to use in the simulated vomiting device.

A total of 13.1 mL (representing a scaled down volume for 800 mL of vomitus) of each solution was pipetted into the stomach chamber of the device, which contained 3.27 mL of air (scaled down from 200 mL in the human body). Using the pump, the stomach was pressurized to 1,283 mmHg (scaled average pressure experienced in the stomach during projectile vomiting), 290 mmHg (scaled maximum pressure experienced in the human stomach), and 115.1 mmHg (minimum pressure for the device) [24]. Pressures greater than 1,283 mmHg were not used because these approached the pressure gauge capacity. Also, the scaled average pressure in the stomach during projectile vomiting (1,283 mmHg) produced a projectile with a force that appeared to be greater than what would be anticipated in a normal vomiting incident. Therefore, the maximum actual pressure observed in the human stomach (290 mmHg) was assumed to be more relevant and used for comparison purposes. Video observation of recorded human vomiting events showed evidence of coughing after the initial vomiting event. The purpose of coughing is to help clear the airway of debris, to prevent aspiration of foreign materials, and to protect the lungs from overextending maximum inspiration [28]. Therefore, a vomiting event followed by four coughs or retches was also simulated using a pressure of 290 mmHg with 4 "coughs" at 233 mmHg each [24].

The components of the vomiting device and chamber were sterilized using 10% bleach for a 5 min exposure followed by rinsing with tap water and wiping with 70% ethanol. The biosampler was autoclaved after each experiment. A negative control with no MS2 was included in all experiments to demonstrate the absence of cross contamination. Immediately before experiments, the entire device was exposed to 254 nm of ultraviolet light for 1 h. Samples collected (by pipet) and analyzed (enumerated for MS2) included: (i) MS2 stock aliquot; (ii) MS2 with thickener (inoculated artificial vomitus solution); (iii) PBS from the biosampler (captured aerosolized virus); (iv) PBS rinse of the biosampler (residual captured aerosolized virus); and (v)

liquid splatter on the bottom of the chamber. Volumes of samples collected and amount of surrogate vomitus remaining in the stomach chamber were also recorded. Previous experiments, in which the chamber was swabbed after a simulated vomiting event, and those swabs enumerated for MS2, confirmed that virus deposition on dry surfaces of the chamber was minimal (cumulatively, <0.1% of total input) (data not shown).

Statistical Analysis

Experiments were performed in triplicate. To calculate the amount of MS2 aerosolized, the concentration of MS2 captured by the biosampler was normalized for both volume and for biosampler capture efficiency (8.5%). The Holm-Sidak multiple comparisons test (SigmaPlot, San Jose, CA) was used for all pairwise comparisons between treatments and pressures. Statistical significance was established at $p<0.05$,$\boldsymbol{\alpha} = 0.05$. For comparing the percent recoveries, the data were not normally distributed; therefore non-parametric Kruskall-Wallis ANOVA by ranks was performed.

Ethics Statement

This research meets all applicable standards for the ethics of experimentation and research integrity.

Results

A snapshot of a simulated projectile vomiting event is shown in Fig 2 and a video recording hosted at (http://youtu.be/jGvqb87DXSI). After each vomiting episode, virtually all of the vomitus solution was deposited at the bottom of the chamber. However, there was evidence of aerosolized MS2 after every simulated vomiting episode (Fig 3). At low initial MS2 inoculum titer (10^8 PFU/mL) suspended in 0.1% CMC (low viscosity), there were statistically significant differences between $\log_{10}$ concentration of MS2 recovered from aerosolized vomitus as a function of pressure (i.e., higher MS2 concentration with higher pressure). The same occurred for high titer (10^{10} PFU/mL), low viscosity experiments, although these differences were not statistically significant. There appeared to be little relationship between pressure and aerosolization for the high titer, high viscosity experiments. The high viscosity, high titer MS2 inoculum was not expelled out of the simulator at the low pressure of 115.1 mmHg, presumably because of the low expulsion force. There was also no statistically significant difference in the

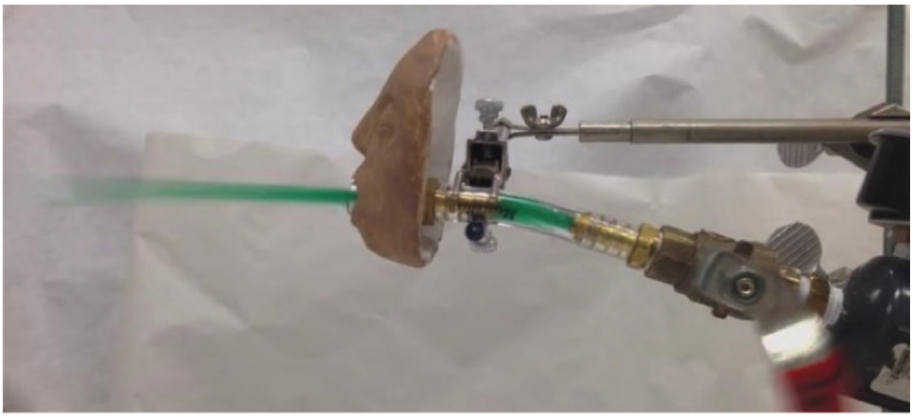


Fig 2. Photo of a Simulated Vomiting Episode. Projectile vomiting of colored simulated vomitus matrix.

doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0134277.g002

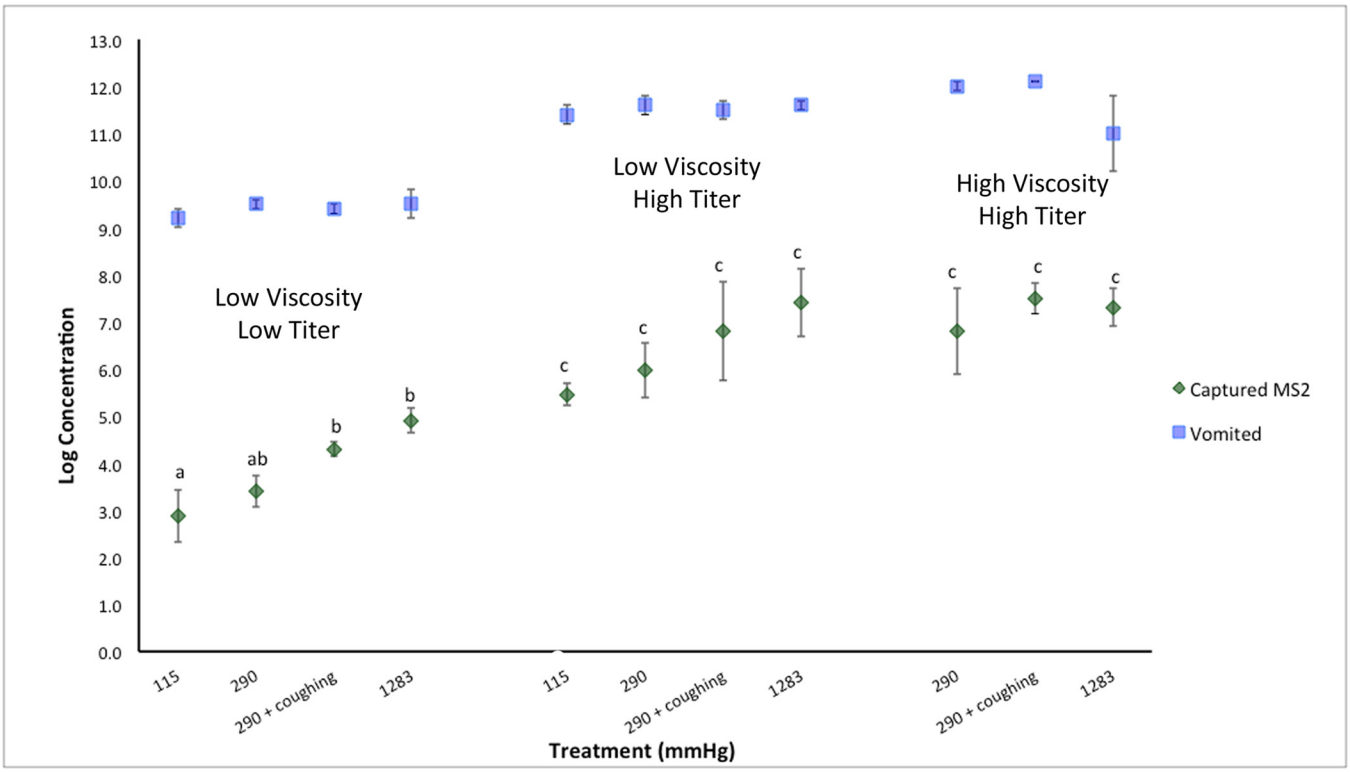


Fig 3. Aerosolization Experiments using bacteriophage MS2. Virus concentration "vomited" is designated by blue squares. Green diamonds show the amount of captured MS2 at designated pressures for simulated vomitus having low and high MS2 titer and of low and high viscosity. Error bars denote one standard deviation above the mean. Shared letters and symbols indicate treatments that were not statistically significantly different within each group.

doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0134277.g003

concentration of MS2 aerosolized for high viscosity, high titer MS2 solution when compared to low viscosity, high titer MS2 simulated vomitus solution. Although not statistically significant, there appeared to be a slight difference of increased MS2 aerosolization when simulated coughing (at 290 mmHg) was added, regardless of virus titer or simulated vomitus viscosity.

The amount of MS2 aerosolized as a percent of total virus "vomited" ranged from a low of $7.2 \times 10^{-5} \pm 0.00006$ to a high of $2.67 \times 10^{-2} \pm 0.03$ (Table 2). These data were not normally distributed; therefore non-parametric Kruskall-Wallis ANOVA by ranks was performed. There were statistically significant differences between vomiting conditions and degree (%) of MS2 aerosolization ($p<0.01$). When the data were log-transformed and reanalyzed, there were no statistically significant differences when comparing MS2 percent aerosolization at 1,283 mmHg to 290 mmHg with coughing, regardless of virus titer or solution viscosity. There were statistically significant differences when comparing percent aerosolization at pressures of 1,283 mmHg and 115 mmHg ($p<0.05$). The general trend was greater percent aerosolization for high titer MS2 at 1,283 mmHg and 290 mmHg with coughing, than 290 mmHg and 115 mmHg without coughing.

Discussion and Conclusions

By simulating vomiting using a device scaled to human physiological parameters according to similitude principles, this study demonstrated that virus (MS2) aerosolization did indeed occur. These results complement the recent work of Bonifait et al. (2015), who provided the first definitive evidence of NoV bioaerosolization [29]. Specifically, they found evidence of

Table 2. Percent Recoveries of Aerosolized MS2.

Treatment		% Aerosolized	Log % Aerosolized	Statistical Significance
1,283 mmHg	Low Viscosity, Low Titer	$2.8 \times 10^{-3} \pm 0.001$	-2.58 ± 0.21	A B C
	Low Viscosity, High Titer	$1.3 \times 10^{-2} \pm 0.01$	-2.2 ± 0.81	A B
	High Viscosity, High Titer	$2.7 \times 10^{-2} \pm 0.03$	-1.72 ± 0.42	A
290 mmHg	Low Viscosity, Low Titer	$1.1 \times 10^{-4} \pm 0.00005$	-4.02 ± 0.24	C D
	Low Viscosity, High Titer	$4.6 \times 10^{-4} \pm 0.0005$	-3.58 ± 0.63	B C D
	High Viscosity, High Titer	$1.4 \times 10^{-3} \pm 0.001$	-3.29 ± 1.00	A B C D
290 mmHg + coughing	Low Viscosity, Low Titer	$9.6 \times 10^{-4} \pm 0.0005$	-3.06 ± 0.24	A B C D
	Low Viscosity, High Titer	$1.1 \times 10^{-2} \pm 0.02$	-2.55 ± 0.93	A B C
	High Viscosity, High Titer	$3.2 \times 10^{-3} \pm 0.002$	-2.57 ± 0.31	A B C
115 mmHg	Low Viscosity, Low Titer	$7.2 \times 10^{-5} \pm 0.00006$	-4.35 ± 0.63	D
	Low Viscosity, High Titer	$1.33 \times 10^{-4} \pm 0.00009$	-3.93 ± 0.27	B C D

* Shared letters denote treatments with no statistically significant differences at $p>0.05$.

doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0134277.t002

NoV genogroup II in 8/48 air samples collected; positive samples had concentrations (by RT-qPCR) of 1.4×10^1–2.4×10^3 genome copies per m^3 of air. We, on the other hand, provide evidence that virus aerosols can be produced during the act of vomiting. Together, our work and that of Bonifait et al. (2015) add to the growing evidence that NoV aerosolization occurs by vomiting.

In all cases, <0.03% of the initial concentration of MS2 in the artificial vomitus was aerosolized, though the numbers were quite variable. While a small percentage of the virus released during simulated vomiting was aerosolized, what was released could be enough to cause a significant disease risk. For instance, if an individual vomits at least 50 mL with at least 10^6 particles/mL (numbers from Greenberg et al. (1979)), this would mean 5×10^7 particles would be vomited. Even with the lowest percent of aerosolized virus (7.2×10^{-5}% for 115 mmHg at low titer), approximately 36 virus particles would become aerosolized. In contrast, the highest percent aerosolized (2.67×10^{-2}% shown at 1,283 mmHg for high titer, high viscosity artificial vomitus) would result in aerosolization of >13,000 particles. Interestingly, these numbers are consistent with those estimated for bioaerosols in outbreak settings (1.4×10^1–2.4×10^3 genome copies per m^3 of air) by Bonifait et al. (2015)[29]. Given the low infectious dose of human NoV (20–1300 particles) [5,6], these numbers are clearly enough to make exposed susceptible individuals ill.

Spatial associations and attack rate patterns occurring as a consequence of vomiting incidents support human NoV aerosolization. Marks et al. (2000) demonstrated that attack rates were related to how far individuals sat from the initial vomiting incident in a hotel restaurant: 91% for those sitting at the same table, 56–71% for those at adjacent tables, and 25% for those

seated at the table furthest from the incident [12]. Similarly, Harris et al. (2013) showed that individuals in the same vicinity within a hospital as patients with symptoms of human NoV infection were more likely to become infected than individuals further away [30]. Such spatial associations may be a function of the number and droplet size during vomiting. Smaller droplets may remain in the air for longer periods of time and be subjected to indoor air movements, thus traveling further. On the other hand, larger droplets would be more likely to settle to the surface closer to the initial vomiting incident [31,32].

Pressure was a major parameter investigated in this study. Booth (2014) recently reported on a simulated vomiting system that was used to characterize the extent of splatter occurring in vomiting event [33]. Although that study did not examine aerosolization, an authentic mannequin that is typically used for training adult airway management, with realistic anatomy parts of the upper respiratory tract and an esophagus and stomach (which was replaced with a cylinder containing 1 L of fluid) was used. That study reported that, for their model, a pressure of 6,000 mmHg was required to eject 1 L of water a distance of 1.2 meters. This pressure is significantly greater than the 1,283 mmHg maximum pressure that we used in our simulated vomiting experiments, which was scaled to the average pressure in the human stomach during a vomiting incident as reported by Iqbal et al., 2008 [24]. Assuming that the Booth model was exactly human scale, the pressures required to model vomiting are almost 20 times greater than the average values reported by Iqbal et al., 2008 [24].

Although the amount of virus aerosolized was generally positively correlated with the pressure with which the vomitus was released, this relationship was not always statistically significant. This was partially due to the large standard deviations in the measurements, suggesting high variability in degree of virus aerosolization during vomiting. This implies that even a relatively minor vomiting event may have public health significance. We did not observe a major role for viscosity in the degree of virus aerosolization, despite the fact that others have found that suspension media can play an important role in resistance of virus to aerosolization [19].

Human NoV particles have a diameter of 32 nm and a buoyant density of 1.41 g/cm^3 [12]. Particles this small undergo random Brownian motion and will eventually collide with other particles and coagulate to form larger particles. Based on the parameters above, the settling velocity for a single NoV particle, calculated using Stokes' law, is 4.7 x 10^{-8} m/s. This is very slow, and if left uninterrupted, the virus could remain in the air for months. Of course, it is highly unlikely that virus travel would remain uninterrupted, or that single viruses would be aerosolized without some attachment to the suspending matrix.

Hence, droplets formed as a consequence of a vomiting incident are very important in transmission. Droplet transmission occurs when aerosolized particles are large enough (100–500 μm in diameter) to settle to the ground quickly. For example, a 100 μm droplet, with density of 1.41 g/cm^3 settling in air at 20° C, is predicted to travel 0.46 m/s, meaning that for a distance of 1 meter it will only take the droplet a few seconds to reach the ground [34]. These droplets can also fall on inanimate surfaces, resulting in contamination of fomites.

Consistent with the work of others [35–37], we used the SKC Biosampler for quantifying virus recovery due to aerosolization. This biosampler has been shown to be better for retaining virus infectivity [35], and in comparative studies with other biosamplers, has also been found to be the most efficient at virus capture [19,35,36]. However, there is wide variability in the reported efficiency of virus capture using the SKC Biosampler. For example, Fabian et al., (2009) reported 96% collection efficiency for aerosolized influenza virus particles >1 μm in diameter, and 79% for particles 0.3 μm in diameter using the SKC unit [36]. Others have reported lower capture efficiencies. Hogan et al., 2005 demonstrated <10% efficiency for capturing aerosolized MS2 particles of 30–100 nm in diameter using the SKC Biosampler [37], while Turgeon et al., 2014 found MS2 recovery to be approximately 0.1% as determined by

plaque assay and qPCR [19]. We observed recovery efficiencies similar to these (8.5%) when a nebulizer was used to aerosolize MS2 with the SKC Biosampler.

Although due diligence was taken in model and experimental design, there are a few limitations to this study. For instance, even though the equipment was appropriately scaled, the structural features of the simulated vomiting device were not the same as human anatomy. While the pressures used for simulated vomiting were scaled, the force with which the vomiting occurred using the device sometimes appeared greater than one might expect in real life. Vomitus in nature would undoubtedly contain solids, and the use of solids-free simulated fluids could have impacted the likelihood or degree of virus aerosolization. Based on the model's design, a solids-containing suspension could not be used. The SKC Biosampler has been shown to be more effective at collecting larger airborne particles, but is unable to distinguish particle size. There may potentially be greater aerosolization that could not be detected using the SKC Biosampler, as the efficiency of recovery decreased as size of the particle decreased. Lastly, although MS2 is a logical surrogate virus for human NoV because of its ease of enumeration and safety, it is still necessary to extrapolate the behavior of the surrogate to that of human NoV. Not only has MS2 been a popular surrogate for many pathogenic viruses, it is often used in aerosol studies to examine air samplers and aerosol generation techniques [37,38]. MS2 is also environmentally persistent, like human NoV [39]. Surrogate viruses, like MS2, have been used in other virus aerosolization studies [40–42]. We note that the experimental approach used here, and employing a physical model designed according to similitude principles, may be useful in studies of aerosolization of other viruses during vomiting. For those studies, other surrogate viruses that are similar to size, composition (e.g., lipid envelop or non-enveloped), and other characteristics to the virus being modeled, would be more appropriate.

To our knowledge, this is the first study to document and measure aerosolization of a NoV surrogate in a similitude-based physical model. Relative to the MS2 titers "vomited," the degree of aerosolization was rather minimal (<0.01%). However, based on human NoV infectious dose and estimated virus concentrations in vomitus, even these small percentages of aerosolization would likely result in significant disease risk, as was suggested in the recent findings of Bonifait et al. (2015) [29]. Future studies should focus on characterizing aerosolized particle droplet size as this plays an important role in the settling rate of viruses. The work reported here has implications for better understanding the transmission dynamics of human NoV and for risk modeling purposes, both of which can help in designing effective infection control measures.

Supporting Information

S1 File. Supplementary Material Explaining Concepts and Equations for the Construction of the Vomiting Machine.
(PDF)

Acknowledgments

We acknowledge K. Creme for challenging comments and insight as this work developed.

Author Contributions

Conceived and designed the experiments: GTT FL FLD LAJ KK. Performed the experiments: GTT DAL. Analyzed the data: GTT. Contributed reagents/materials/analysis tools: FLD KK LAJ. Wrote the paper: GTT DAL LAJ FLD KK.

References

1. Hall AJ, Wikswo ME, Manikonda K, Roberts VA, Yoder JS, Gould LH. Acute gastroenteritis surveillance through the National Outbreak Reporting System, United States. Emerg Infect Dis. 2013; 19: 1305–1309. doi: 10.3201/eid1908.130482 PMID: 23876187
2. Scallan E, Hoekstra RM, Angulo FJ, Tauxe RV, Widdowson MA, Roy SL, et al. Foodborne illness acquired in the United States—major pathogens. Emerg Infect Dis. 2011; 17(1):7–15. doi: 10.3201/eid1701.091101p1 PMID: 21192848
3. Greenberg HB, Wyatt RG, Kapikian AZ. Norwalk virus in vomitus. The Lancet. 1979; 1(8106):55.
4. Caul EO. Small round structured viruses: airborne transmission and hospital control. The Lancet. 1994; 343: 1240–1242. doi: 10.1016/S0140-6736(94)92146-6
5. Teunis PFM, Moe CL, Liu P, E Miller S, Lindesmith L, Baric RS, et al. Norwalk virus: How infectious is it? Journal of Medical Virology 2008; 80 (8): 1468–1476. doi: 10.1002/jmv.21237 PMID: 18551613
6. Atmar RL, Opekun AR, Gilger MA, Estes MK, Crawford SE, Neill FH, et al. Determination of the 50% human infectious dose for Norwalk virus. J Infect Dis. 2014; 209 (7): 1016–1022. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jit620 PMID: 24253285
7. Cheesbrough JS, Green J, Gallimore CI, Wright PA, Bown DW. Widespread environmental contamination with Norwalk-like viruses (NLV) detected in a prolonged hotel outbreak of gastroenteritis. Epidemiol Infect. 2000; 125 (1): 93–98. PMID: 11057964
8. Gallimore CI, Taylor C, Gennery AR, Cant AJ, Galloway A, Xerry J, et al. Contamination of the Hospital Environment with Gastroenteric Viruses: Comparison of Two Pediatric Wards over a Winter Season. J Clin Microbiol. 2008; 46 (9): 3112–3115. doi: 10.1128/JCM.00400-08 PMID: 18614656
9. Atmar RL, Opekun AR, Gilger MA, Estes MK, Crawford SE, Neill FH, et al. Norwalk Virus Shedding after Experimental Human Infection. Emerg Infect Dis. 2008; 14(10): 1553–1557. doi: 10.3201/eid1410.080117 PMID: 18826818
10. Todd ECD, Greig JD, Bartleson CA, Michaels BS. Outbreaks Where Food Workers Have Been Implicated in the Spread of Foodborne Disease. Part 5. Sources of Contamination and Pathogen Excretion from Infected Persons. J Food Prot. 2008; 72(12):2582–95.
11. Isakbaeva ET, Widdowson M-A, Beard RS, Bulens SN, Mullins J, Monroe SS, et al. Norovirus Transmission on Cruise Ship. Emerg Infect Dis. 2005; 11 (1): 154–8. doi: 10.3201/eid1101.040434 PMID: 15705344
12. Marks PJ, Vipond IB, Carlisle D, Deakin D, Fey RE, Caul EO. Evidence for airborne transmission of Norwalk-like virus (NLV) in a hotel restaurant. Epidemiol Infct. 2000; 124 (3): 481–487.
13. Lopman B, Gastañaduy P, Park GW, Hall AJ, Parashar UD, Vinje J. Environmental transmission of norovirus gastroenteritis. Current Opinion in Virology 2012; 2 (1): 96–102. doi: 10.1016/j.coviro.2011.11.005 PMID: 22440972
14. Beggs CB. The Airborne Transmission of Infection in Hospital Buildings: Fact or Fiction? Indoor and Built Environment. 2003; 12: 9–18. doi: 10.1177/1420326X03012001002
15. Eames I, Tang JW, Li Y, Wilson P. Airborne transmission of disease in hospitals. J R Soc Interface.2009; 6: S697–S702. doi: 10.1098/rsif.2009.0407.focus PMID: 19828499
16. Gralton J, Tovey E, McLaws M-L, Rawlinson WD. The role of particle size in aerosolised pathogen transmission: A review. Journal of Infection. 2011; 62 (1): 1–13. doi: 10.1016/j.jinf.2010.11.010
17. Dawson DJ, Paish A, Staffell LM, Seymour IJ, Appleton H. Survival of viruses on fresh produce, using MS2 as a surrogate for norovirus. Journal of Applied Microbiology. 2005; 98: 203–209. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2672.2004.02439.x PMID: 15610433
18. Maillard JY, Beggs TS, Day MJ, Hudson RA, Russell AD. Effect of Biocides on MS2 and K Coliphages. Appl Environ Microbiol.1994; 60: 2205–2206. PMID: 16349309
19. Turgeon N, Toulouse M-J, Martel B, Moineau S, Duchaine C. Comparison of Five Bacteriophages as Models for Viral Aerosols Studies. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2014; 80: AEM.00767–14–4250. doi: 10.1128/AEM.00767-14
20. Koch KL. Nausea and Vomiting. In: Wolfe MM, editor. Therapy of Digestive Disorders. Philadelphia. 2006; pp. 1003–1117.
21. Fox RW, McDonald AT, Pritchard PJ. Introduction to Fluid Mechanics. Wiley Sons, Inc., editor Hoboken, NJ. 2004.
22. Kuo B, Urma D.Esophagus-anatomy and development. GI Motility online. 2006. doi: 10.1038/gimo6
23. Dijkstra PU, Hof AL, Stegenga B. Influence of mandibular length on mouth opening. Journal of oral rehabilitation. 1999.

24. Iqbal A, Haider M, Stadlhuber RJ, Karu A, Corkill S, Filipi CJ. A study of intragastric and intravesicular pressure changes during rest, coughing, weight lifting, retching, and vomiting. Surg Endosc. 2008; 22: 2571–2575. doi: 10.1007/s00464-008-0080-0 PMID: 18810545

25. Badman L. Water Matters: Proposed Changes to ANSI/NSF Standard 55-Ultraviolet Microbiological Water Treatment Systems. Water Conditioning and Purification. 2001; 43.

26. Su X, D'Souza DH. Grape Seed Extract for Control of Human Enteric Viruses. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2011; 77 (12): 3982–3987. doi: 10.1128/AEM.00193-11 PMID: 21498749

27. Sarkar A, Goh KKT, Singh H. Colloidal stability and interactions of milk-protein-stabilized emulsions in an artificial saliva. Food Hydrocolloids. 2009; 23: 1270–1278. doi: 10.1016/j.foodhyd.2008.09.008

28. Leith DE, Butler JP, Sneddon SL, Brain JD. Cough. Hoboken, NJ, USA: John Wiley & Sons, Inc. 1986. doi: 10.1002/cphy.cp030320.31 Nazaroff WW. Norovirus, gastroenteritis, and indoor environmental quality. Indoor Air. 2011. doi: 10.1111/j.1600-0668.2011.00735.x

29. Bonifait L, Charlebois R, Vimont A, Turgeon N, Veillette M, Longtin Y, et al. Detection and quantification of airborne norovirus during outbreaks in healthcare facilities. Clin Infect Dis. Advance Access published April 21, 2015. doi: 10.1093/cid/civ321

30. Harris JP, Ben A Lopman, Ben S Cooper, O'Brien SJ. Does spatial proximity drive norovirus transmission during outbreaks in hospitals? BMJ Open 2013; 3: e003060–e003060. doi: 10.1136/bmjopen-2013-003060

31. Nazaroff WW. Norovirus, gastroenteritis, and indoor environmental quality. Indoor Air. 2011. doi: 10.1111/j.1600-0668.2011.00735.x

32. Beggs CB, Kerr KG. The threat posed by airborne micro-organisms. Indoor and Built Environment. 2000; 9:241–245. doi: 10.1159/000057517

33. Booth CM. Vomiting Larry: a simulated vomiting system for assessing environmental contamination from projectile vomiting related to norovirus infection. Journal of Infection Prevention. 2014: doi: 10.1177/1757177414545390

34. Papineni RS, Rosenthal FS.The Size Distribution of Droplets in the Exhaled Breath of Healthy Human Subjects. Journal of Aerosol Medicine. 1997; 10: 105–116. doi: 10.1089/jam.1997.10.105 PMID: 10168531

35. Lindsley WG, Blachere FM, Thewlis RE, Vishnu A, Davis KA, Cao G, et al. Measurements of Airborne Influenza Virus in Aerosol Particles from Human Coughs. PLoS ONE. 2010; 5: e15100. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0015100 PMID: 21152051

36. Fabian P, McDevitt JJ, Houseman EA, Milton DK. Airborne influenza virus detection with four aerosol samplers using molecular and infectivity assays: considerations for a new infectious virus aerosol sampler. Indoor Air. 2009; 19: 433–441. doi: 10.1111/j.1600-0668.2009.00609.x PMID: 19689447

37. Hogan CJ, Kettleson EM, Lee MH, Ramaswami B, Angenent LT, Biswas P. Sampling methodologies and dosage assessment techniques for submicrometre and ultrafine virus aerosol particles. Journal of Applied Microbiology. 2005; 99: 1422–1434. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2672.2005.02720.x PMID: 16313415

38. Zuo Z, Kuehn TH, Bekele AZ, Mor SK, Verma H, Goyal SM. Survival of Airborne MS2 Bacteriophage Generated from Human Saliva, Artificial Saliva, and Cell Culture Medium. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2014; 80 (9): 2796–2803. doi: 10.1128/AEM.00056-14 PMID: 24561592

39. Kotwal G, Cannon JL. Environmental persistence and transfer of enteric viruses. Current Opinion in Virology. 2014; 4: 37–43. doi: 10.1016/j.coviro.2013.12.003 PMID: 24413147

40. Verreault D, Moineau S, Duchaine C. Methods for sampling of airborne viruses. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev. 2008; 72: 413–444. doi: 10.1128/MMBR.00002-08 PMID: 18772283

41. Tseng C-C, Li C-S. Collection efficiencies of aerosol samplers for virus-containing aerosols. Journal of Aerosol Science. 2005; 36: 593–607. doi: 10.1016/j.jaerosci.2004.12.004

42. Utrup LJ, Frey AH. Fate of bioterrorism-relevant viruses and bacteria, including spores, aerosolized into an indoor air environment. Exp Biol Med (Maywood). 2004; 229(4): 345–350.

Journal of Food Protection, Vol. 76, No. 11, 2013, Pages 1838–1845
doi:10.4315/0362-028X.JFP-13-111
Copyright ©, International Association for Food Protection

Efficacy of Commercial Produce Sanitizers against Nontoxigenic *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 during Processing of Iceberg Lettuce in a Pilot-Scale Leafy Green Processing Line

GORDON R. DAVIDSON, ANNEMARIE L. BUCHHOLZ, AND ELLIOT T. RYSER*

Department of Food Science and Human Nutrition, Michigan State University, East Lansing, Michigan 48824, USA

MS 13-111: Received 20 March 2013/Accepted 1 July 2013

ABSTRACT

Chemical sanitizers are routinely used during commercial flume washing of fresh-cut leafy greens to minimize cross-contamination from the water. This study assessed the efficacy of five commercial sanitizer treatments against *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 on iceberg lettuce, in wash water, and on equipment during simulated commercial production in a pilot-scale processing line. Iceberg lettuce (5.4 kg) was inoculated to contain 10^6 CFU/g of a four-strain cocktail of nontoxigenic, green fluorescent protein–labeled, ampicillin-resistant *E. coli* O157:H7 and processed after 1 h of draining at ~22°C. Lettuce was shredded using a commercial slicer, step-conveyed to a flume tank, washed for 90 s using six different treatments (water alone, 50 ppm of peroxyacetic acid, 50 ppm of mixed peracid, or 50 ppm of available chlorine either alone or acidified to pH 6.5 with citric acid [CA] or T-128), and then dried using a shaker table and centrifugal dryer. Various product (25-g) and water (50-ml) samples collected during processing along with equipment surface samples (100 cm^2) from the flume tank, shaker table, and centrifugal dryer were homogenized in neutralizing buffer and plated on tryptic soy agar. During and after iceberg lettuce processing, none of the sanitizers were significantly more effective ($P \leq 0.05$) than water alone at reducing *E. coli* O157:H7 populations on lettuce, with reductions ranging from 0.75 to 1.4 log CFU/g. Regardless of the sanitizer treatment used, the centrifugal dryer surfaces yielded *E. coli* O157:H7 populations of 3.49 to 4.98 log CFU/100 cm^2. Chlorine, chlorine plus CA, and chlorine plus T-128 were generally more effective ($P \leq 0.05$) than the other treatments, with reductions of 3.79, 5.47, and 5.37 log CFU/ml after 90 s of processing, respectively. This indicates that chlorine-based sanitizers will likely prevent wash water containing low organic loads from becoming a vehicle for cross-contamination.

In 2009, leafy greens were ranked as the riskiest food category regulated by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, accounting for 363 outbreaks and 13,568 reported cases of illness *(13)*. Between 1995 and 2006, leafy green–associated outbreaks increased by 38.6%, whereas consumption increased by only 9% *(22)*. The nationwide outbreak of *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 that was traced to baby spinach in 2006 resulted in 205 confirmed infections, 103 hospitalizations, and three deaths *(10, 17)*. Following two additional *E. coli* O157:H7 outbreaks in 2006 linked to shredded iceberg lettuce resulting in 150 illnesses *(12),* at least nine more outbreaks responsible for nearly 300 cases of *E. coli* O157:H7 infection have been documented in the United States through 2012 *(14),* heightening continued safety concerns surrounding fresh-cut leafy greens.

Bacterial pathogens can contaminate leafy greens at any point during the farm-to-fork continuum *(31)*. Major on-farm areas of concern now recognized by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration include agricultural water, biological soil amendments (e.g., manure), domesticated and wild animals, field worker health and hygiene, and the cleanliness of harvesting equipment, tools, and buildings *(47)*. However, leafy greens are also prone to contamination during commercial processing, packing *(8),* distribution, marketing *(51),* and in-home preparation *(35)*. Regarding leafy greens, pathogens are most likely to attach to stomata, irregularities on intact surfaces, cut surfaces, or cracks on the external surfaces *(20, 36, 38, 39, 42)* and can be protected from sanitizers by biofilms *(40)*. Because sanitizers in the wash water cannot be relied upon to inactivate attached or internalized pathogens during processing, it is imperative that growers and harvesters follow good agricultural practices and good handling practices to reduce the likelihood of contamination *(19)*.

Washing of leafy greens remains important for removing soil and debris, decreasing the microbial load, improving quality and appearance, and enhancing product shelf life and safety *(21)*. Numerous small-scale laboratory studies have shown that produce sanitizers reduce pathogen populations only 1 to 3 log CFU on lettuce *(4, 18, 20, 36, 38),* with water alone decreasing *E. coli* O157:H7 levels about 1 log CFU on lettuce during pilot-scale processing *(6)*. Recirculation of this wash water during processing can further magnify the spread of contaminants at large, centralized processing facilities *(21, 28)*. Hence, the

* Author for correspondence. Tel: 517-355-8474, Ext 185; Fax: 517-353-8963; E-mail: ryser@msu.edu.

addition of sanitizers to processing water is imperative to minimize cross-contamination during commercial production of fresh-cut leafy greens *(2, 29, 38, 46)*.

Chlorine-based sanitizers are preferred for commercial flume washing systems because of their relatively low cost compared with other sanitizers and minimal negative impact on end-product quality *(11, 21, 29, 33, 36)*. Since the active component of chlorine, hypochlorous acid (HClO), is most abundant at pH 6.5 to 7.0 *(3)*, the pH of the wash water typically needs to be lowered by adding a weak acid, most commonly citric acid *(21)*. A new, generally recognized as safe acidifying agent composed of phosphoric acid and propylene glycol, known as T-128 (SmartWash Solutions, Salinas, CA), has been developed to improve the stability of chlorine *(25, 29, 33, 41)*. However, chlorine use has raised concerns regarding potentially hazardous by-products, worker safety, environmental damage, and most importantly, decreased efficacy in the presence of an increasing organic load in recirculating flume water, which has heightened interest in other alternatives such as peroxyacetic acid–based sanitizers *(38, 43)*.

Numerous small-scale laboratory studies have assessed sanitizer efficacy against pathogens on leafy greens *(1, 4, 23, 24, 27, 30, 34, 44, 52, 53)*. However, these findings are difficult to extrapolate to large-scale commercial production facilities. Previous work completed by our group was performed without chemical sanitizers to quantify *E. coli* O157:H7 transfer during pilot-plant production of fresh-cut leafy greens *(6, 7)*. Since chemical sanitizers remain the sole intervention strategy to prevent cross-contamination during commercial production of fresh-cut leafy greens, it is imperative that these sanitizers be reevaluated under conditions that more closely resemble commercial operations. Consequently, the objective of this study was to assess the efficacy of five commercial sanitizer treatments against *E. coli* O157:H7 during processing of iceberg lettuce in a pilot-scale leafy green processing line.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Experimental design. The efficacy of five different sanitizing treatments was assessed in triplicate against *E. coli* O157:H7 by processing a 5.4-kg batch of iceberg lettuce inoculated at 10^6 CFU/g, with sanitizer-free water serving as the control. All lettuce was processed by shredding, conveying, fluming, shaker table dewatering, and/or centrifugal drying, during and/or after which various product, water, and equipment surface samples were collected and quantitatively examined for *E. coli* O157:H7.

Iceberg lettuce. Individually wrapped heads of iceberg lettuce (*Lactuca sativa* L.) (24 heads per case) were obtained from a local wholesaler (Stan Setas Produce Co., Lansing, MI), with the product originating from California or Arizona depending on the growing season. All lettuce was stored in a 4°C walk-in cooler and used within 5 days of delivery.

Bacterial strains. Four nontoxigenic (stx_1^- and stx_2^-) strains of *E. coli* O157:H7 (ATCC 43888, CV2b7, 6980-2, and 6982-2) were obtained from Dr. Michael Doyle at the Center for Food Safety, University of Georgia, Griffin. These strains had been previously transformed with a pGFPuv plasmid containing a green fluorescent protein gene and ampicillin-resistance gene. All four strains were stored at −80°C in tryptic soy broth (Difco, BD, Sparks, MD) containing 0.6% (wt/vol) yeast extract (Difco, BD) (TSBYE) and 10% (vol/vol) glycerol (Sigma Chemical Co., St. Louis, MO) until needed. Working cultures were prepared by streaking each stock culture on tryptic soy agar plates (Difco, BD) containing 0.6% (wt/vol) yeast extract and 100 ppm of ampicillin (ampicillin sodium salt, Sigma Life Science, St. Louis, MO) (TSAYE plus amp). After 18 to 24 h of incubation at 37°C, a single colony was transferred to 9 ml of TSBYE containing 100 ppm of ampicillin (TSBYE plus amp) and similarly incubated.

Lettuce inoculation. A 0.2-ml aliquot of each nontoxigenic *E. coli* O157:H7 strain was transferred to 200 ml of TSBYE with amp and incubated for 18 to 20 h at 37°C. Based on similar growth rates as determined previously *(6)*, the four strains were combined in equal volumes to obtain an 800-ml cocktail, which was added to 80 liters of municipal tap water (~15°C, <0.05 ppm of free chlorine) in a 121-liter plastic container (Rubbermaid, Wooster, OH) to achieve a level of $\sim 10^7$ CFU/ml. Hand-cored heads of iceberg lettuce (~12 heads) were immersed in the *E. coli* suspension for 15 min and then drained or air dried for 1 h at 22°C before being spun in a dewatering centrifuge (described below) to remove residual inoculum from the interior of the heads. Duplicate 25-g samples were then aseptically collected to determine the initial inoculation level at the time of processing.

Lettuce processing line. The same small-scale commercial leafy green processing line consisting of a lettuce shredder, step conveyer, flume tank, shaker table, and dewatering centrifuge was used as previously described in detail by Buchholz et al. *(6)*. For this work, a custom-made stainless steel gate with 1.25-cm-diameter holes spaced 0.65 cm apart (Heinzen Manufacturing, Inc., Gilroy, CA) was added at the end of the 3.3-m-long stainless steel flume tank to retain the product during 90 s of washing.

Wash water. Iceberg lettuce (0.5 kg) was homogenized in 500 ml of Michigan State University tap water using a mechanical blender (model BLC10650MB, Black & Decker, New Britain, CT) and then added to 890 liters of processing water at 12 to 15°C to achieve a low organic load. The following five commercial produce sanitizer treatments were assessed: 30 ppm of peroxyacetic acid (Tsunami 100, Ecolab, St. Paul, MN), 30 ppm of mixed peracid (Tsunami 200, Ecolab), 30 ppm of available chlorine (XY-12, Ecolab) at pH 7.85, 30 ppm of available chlorine (XY-12) acidified to pH 6.50 with citric acid (Sigma-Aldrich, St. Louis, MO), and 30 ppm of available chlorine (XY-12) acidified to pH 6.50 with T-128 (SmartWash Solutions) as measured with a pH probe (pHTestr 30, Oakton, Vernon Hills, IL). Peroxyacetic acid test kit 311 (Ecolab) was used to confirm the peroxyacetic acid and mixed peracid sanitizer concentrations, and chlorine test kit 321 (Ecolab) was used to measure available chlorine. Sanitizer-free Michigan State University tap water (<0.05 ppm of free chlorine) served as the control.

Lettuce processing. Inoculated heads of cored iceberg lettuce (5.4 kg) were hand-fed into the shredder at a rate of about 0.5 kg per s, with the shredded product then step-conveyed at a rate of 2.85 m/s to the top of the conveyor. Processing was then halted for ~10 min to aseptically collect and bag five 25-g lettuce samples in red mesh produce bags (5 lb Header Bag, Pacon Inc., Baldwin Park, CA) for subsequent sampling. Thereafter, processing was resumed with the iceberg lettuce conveyed to the flume tank, washed in 890 liters of recirculating wash water with or without a

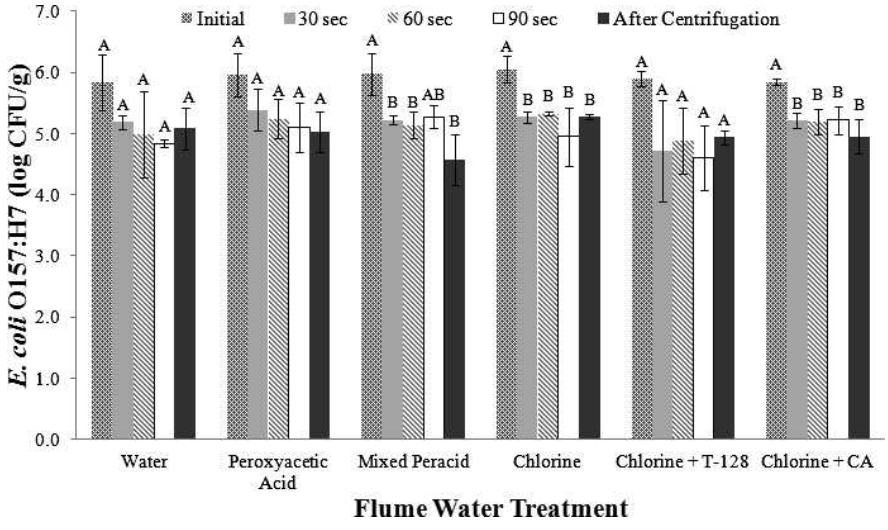


FIGURE 1. *Mean (±SD)* E. coli *O157:H7 populations on the iceberg lettuce inoculated at ~6 log CFU/g during and after processing (*n = *3). Means of the same wash water treatment with different letters are significantly different (*P ≤ *0.05).*

sanitizer for 90 s, partially dewatered on the shaker table, collected in a single centrifugation basket, and centrifugally dried.

Sample collection. During the 90 s of flume washing, three prebagged iceberg lettuce samples (25 g each) were retrieved at the flume gate at 30-s intervals and were immediately added to 100 ml of sterile Difco neutralizing buffer (BD, Franklin Lakes, NJ) in a Whirl-Pak filter bag (Nasco, Fort Atkinson, WI). In addition, nine 50-ml water samples were collected at 10-s intervals in 50-ml centrifuge tubes containing 38× concentrated Difco neutralizing buffer (BD). After shaker table dewatering, product in the basket was dried in the preset 50-lb (110-kg) capacity Spin Dryer (model SD50-LT, Heinzen Manufacturing). During centrifugal drying, four water samples (50 ml each) were similarly collected from the centrifuge drain at 10-s intervals for the first 40 s of the 80-s cycle. After centrifugation, two bagged lettuce samples (25 g each) were also retrieved from the centrifugation basket. Nine product contact areas on the equipment (three flume tank, three shaker table, and three dewatering centrifuge), previously described in detail by Buchholz et al. *(6),* measuring 100 cm^2 as previously identified using Glo Germ (Glo Germ Co., Moab, UT) were sampled immediately after processing as described by Vorst et al. *(48)* using one-ply composite tissues moistened with 1 ml of sterile Difco neutralizing buffer (BD).

Microbiological analyses. All lettuce samples (25 g) were homogenized in a stomacher (Stomacher 400 Circulator, Seward, Worthington, UK) for 1 min at 260 rpm and then either appropriately diluted in sterile 1% (wt/vol) phosphate buffer (8.5 g/liter NaCl, 1.44 g/liter Na_2HPO_4, and 0.24 g/liter KH_2PO_4; J.T. Baker, Mallinckrodt Baker Inc., Phillipsburg, NJ) and plated on TSAYE with amp (calculated minimum detection limit of 40 CFU/g) or processed using 0.45-μm-pore-size membrane filters (Millipore, Millipore Corporation, Billerica, MA) (calculated minimum detection limit of 0.04 CFU/g), which were placed on 60-mm-diameter petri plates containing TSAYE with amp to quantify *E. coli* O157:H7. The one-ply composite tissue samples were added to 15 ml of sterile Difco neutralizing buffer in a Whirl-Pak bag, homogenized for 1 min at 260 rpm, and then plated identically to the lettuce samples, giving a calculated lower detection limit of 1 CFU/100 cm^2. The 50-ml water samples were either appropriately diluted in sterile 1% phosphate buffer and plated on TSAYE with amp or processed by membrane filtration, which gave a calculated minimum detection limit of 0.02 CFU/ml. Following 20 to 24 h of incubation at 37°C, all green fluorescing colonies as seen under UV light (365 nm; Blak-Ray, Ultra-violet Product Inc., San Gabriel, CA) were counted as *E. coli* O157:H7.

Sanitizer neutralization confirmation. Triplicate 1-liter water samples containing 30 ppm of available chlorine (XY-12), 30 ppm of peroxyacetic acid (Tsunami 100), or 30 ppm of mixed peracid (Tsunami 200 ppm) were prepared and confirmed with chlorine test kit 321 or peroxyacetic acid test kit 311. Citric acid (Sigma-Aldrich) and T-128 were used to acidify the chlorine-based sanitizer solution to pH 6.5. A 50-ml centrifuge tube containing 3 ml of 38× concentrated neutralizing buffer (BD) was filled with the sample containing sanitizer, agitated for 5 s, and then immediately assessed for neutralization of the sanitizer as previously described using the appropriate test kit. Preliminary experiments found that a 38× concentration would neutralize various concentrations of the active component of each sanitizing agent used in this study without impacting *E. coli* O157:H7 counts.

Statistical analysis. *E. coli* O157:H7 counts were converted to log CFU per gram, milliliter, or 100 cm^2 and were subjected to analysis of variance using JMP 9.0 (SAS Institute Inc., Cary, NC). Values equaling half the limit of detection were used for samples without *E. coli* O157:H7 counts. The three equipment surface samples from each respective piece of equipment were averaged. A *P* value of ≤0.05 was considered significant for all tests. The Tukey-Kramer honestly significant difference test was used to identify significant differences in *E. coli* O157:H7 populations for individual lettuce, water, and equipment surface samples.

RESULTS

Lettuce. Iceberg lettuce contained an average *E. coli* O157:H7 inoculum of 5.93 log CFU/g at the time of processing (Fig. 1). After shredding, conveying, 90 s of washing, shaker table dewatering, and centrifugal drying, no significant difference ($P > 0.05$) was seen in populations of *E. coli* O157:H7 recovered from the finished product, regardless of sanitizer treatment. Using mixed peracid, *E. coli* O157:H7 populations decreased 1.40 log CFU/g; however, this decrease was not significantly different ($P > 0.05$) compared with the 0.75-log CFU/g reduction seen for water alone. Processing significantly reduced ($P \leq 0.05$) *E. coli* O157:H7 populations on lettuce when mixed peracid, chlorine,

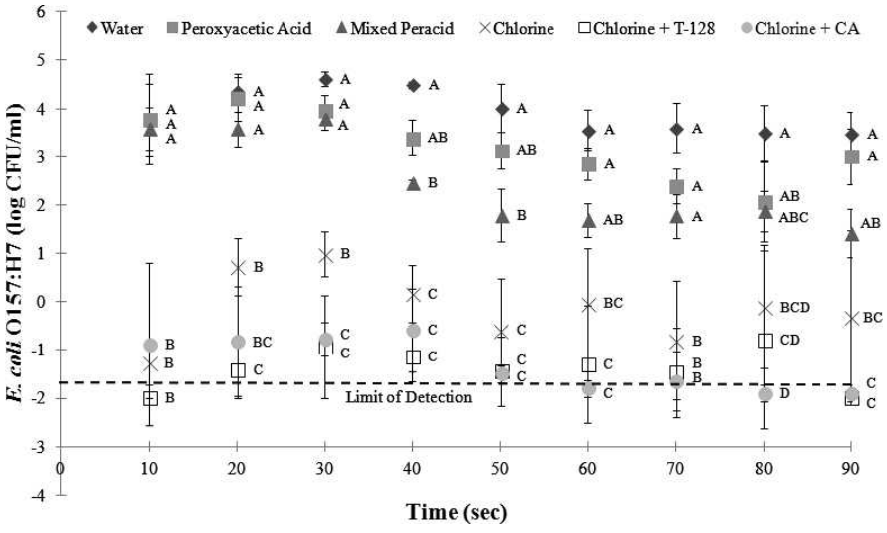


FIGURE 2. *Mean (±SD)* E. coli *O157:H7 populations in flume water during processing iceberg lettuce inoculated at ~6 log CFU/g (n = 3). Half the limit of detection was used to calculate the mean log value when a sample did not yield any colonies by direct plating. Means of the same product type with different letters are significantly different (P ≤ 0.05).*

or chlorine plus CA were used, with reductions of 1.40, 0.77, and 0.89 log CFU/g, respectively. The reductions of 0.75, 0.93, and 0.97 log CFU/g seen for water alone, peroxyacetic acid, and chlorine plus T-128, respectively, were not significant ($P > 0.05$) (Fig. 1).

Flume water. Wash water containing chlorine, chlorine plus T-128, and chlorine plus CA had significantly lower ($P \leq 0.05$) *E. coli* O157:H7 populations at all sampling times (maximum of 0.99 log CFU/ml) compared with 4.61 log CFU/ml in water alone. Using chlorine plus CA and chlorine plus T-128, *E. coli* O157:H7 levels were below the limit of detection of 0.02 log CFU/ml by the end of processing. *E. coli* O157:H7 populations were similar ($P > 0.05$) using water alone and peroxyacetic acid, with respective populations of 3.47 and 3.01 log CFU/ml recovered after 90 s of processing. Similar *E. coli* O157:H7 populations were obtained using mixed peracid ($P > 0.05$) and peroxyacetic acid, with these populations rarely lower ($P \leq 0.05$) than those in water alone (Fig. 2).

Centrifugation water. Using peroxyacetic acid, mixed peracid, or chlorine, wash water exiting the centrifuge drain after spin drying yielded maximum *E. coli* O157:H7 populations of 4.51, 4.36, and 5.48 log CFU/ml, respectively, which were not significantly different ($P > 0.05$) from those in water alone (maximum population of 5.58 log CFU/ml) during the 40-s sampling period. However, chlorine plus CA and chlorine plus T-128 resulted in *E. coli* O157:H7 populations that were lower than those in water alone ($P \leq 0.05$) during the first 20 s of centrifugation. Water samples collected after 40 s of centrifugation yielded *E. coli* O157:H7 populations that were not significantly different for any of the treatments (Fig. 3).

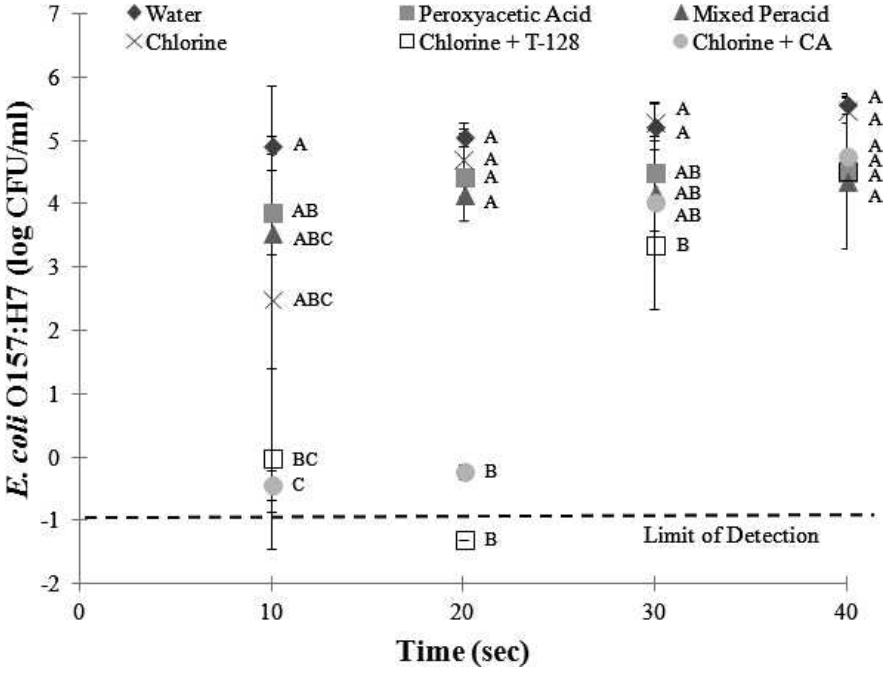


FIGURE 3. *Mean (±SD)* E. coli *O157:H7 populations in spent centrifugation water from iceberg lettuce inoculated at ~6 log CFU/g (n = 3). Half the limit of detection was used to calculate the mean log value when a sample did not yield any colonies by direct plating. Means of the same product type with different letters are significantly different (P ≤ 0.05).*

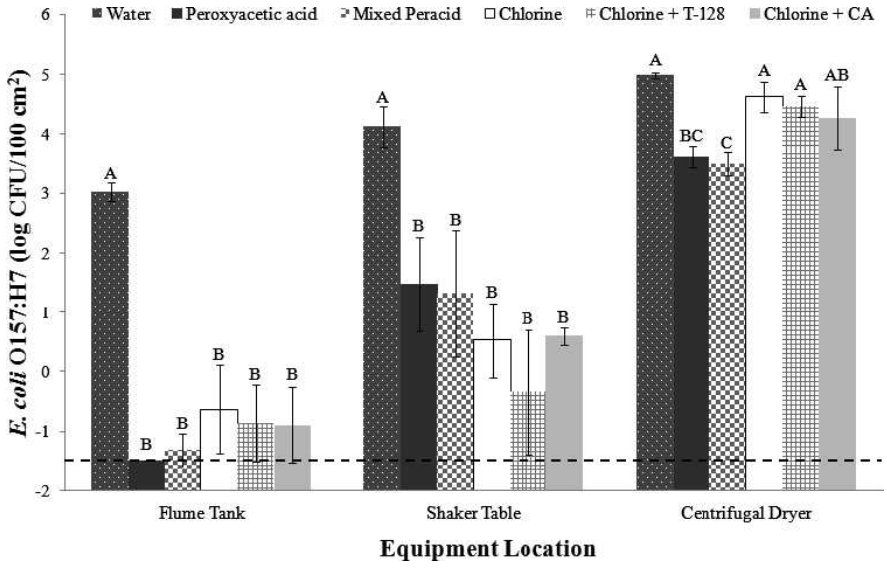


FIGURE 4. *Mean (±SD)* E. coli *O157:H7 populations on equipment surfaces after processing iceberg lettuce inoculated at ~6 log CFU/g* (n = *3). Half the limit of detection was used to calculate the mean log value when a sample did not yield any colonies by direct plating. Means of the same product type with different letters are significantly different (*$P \leq 0.05$*).*

Processing equipment surfaces. After processing iceberg lettuce, all five sanitizer treatments yielded significantly lower ($P \leq 0.05$) *E. coli* O157:H7 populations remaining on the flume tank and shaker table as compared with the water control. Significantly lower ($P \leq 0.05$) *E. coli* O157:H7 populations were recovered on the centrifugal dryer using peroxyacetic acid (3.61 log CFU/100 cm^2) and mixed peracid (3.49 log CFU/100 cm^2) compared with the other treatments, with the highest level (4.98 log CFU/100 cm^2) seen when water alone was used for washing (Fig. 4).

DISCUSSION

Due to the potential production of infectious aerosols during lettuce processing, the same four nontoxigenic strains of *E. coli* O157:H7 were used as in our earlier transfer studies *(6, 7)*. The growth and adherence rates for these four nontoxigenic strains were previously shown to be similar to three strains from the 2006 leafy green outbreaks *(6)*. As previously reported, green fluorescent protein labeling also allowed for easy differentiation of the inoculum from background bacteria *(6, 7, 49)*.

Dip inoculation of the lettuce to contain 6 log CFU/g was crucial to ensure uniform distribution of *E. coli* O157:H7 throughout the heads as well as quantifiable results for subsequent mathematical modeling with this work to be reported elsewhere. Although this inoculation level clearly exceeds levels thought to occur on field-grown lettuce, feces from ''super-shedding'' cows can potentially contain *E. coli* O157:H7 at levels of 6 log CFU/g *(15)*, with such fecal material potentially able to come in contact with lettuce through irrigation water. Preliminary experiments using a mixture of Glo Germ and water showed uniform fluorescence in dipped heads of iceberg lettuce. Additionally, Buchholz and others *(6)* found that *E. coli* O157:H7 populations were statistically similar in iceberg lettuce heads before and after shredding, indicating that the inoculation was homogenous. Dip inoculation of the cored lettuce heads may have allowed internalization of *E. coli* O157:H7 through the damaged tissues, with such cells protected from sanitizers *(37)*. Since all lettuce samples were processed by stomaching, any internalized cells would have gone undetected with only the cells on the surface of the leaves recovered.

Commercial producers of fresh-cut leafy greens use different sanitizers, sanitizer concentrations, and contact times, depending on the design of the processing line. In this study, six different wash treatments were assessed during 90 s of flume washing. Processing inoculated iceberg lettuce resulted in *E. coli* O157:H7 reductions of 0.75 to 1.4 log CFU/g on the finished product. Both during and after processing, no significant differences in sanitizer efficacy ($P > 0.05$) were seen against *E. coli* O157:H7 on iceberg lettuce for any of the treatments, including water alone. However, three wash treatments—mixed peracid, chlorine, and chlorine plus CA—significantly reduced ($P \leq 0.05$) *E. coli* O157:H7 populations after washing. Numerous small-scale laboratory studies have shown similar pathogen reductions (~1 log CFU/g) during washing of various fruits and vegetables with or without sanitizers *(4, 5, 9, 50)*. Using a pilot-scale leafy green processing line, Luo et al. *(29)* also reported an *E. coli* O157:H7 reduction of <1 log after processing inoculated baby spinach *(29)*. Consequently, produce sanitizers cannot be relied upon to ensure end product safety. Chemical sanitizers are routinely added to recirculating wash water to minimize the spread of microbial contaminants during flume washing *(27)*. Regarding their use, peroxyacetic acid–based sanitizers are limited to a maximum of 80 ppm of peroxyacetic acid *(16, 21)*, whereas free chlorine concentrations typically range from 10 to a maximum of 200 ppm *(20, 36, 45)*. However, soil, debris, and vegetable latexes released during shredding of leafy greens will accumulate in the flume water over time *(32)*, decreasing the efficacy of many sanitizers, most notably chlorine *(2, 26, 38, 52)*. The wash water used in this study contained an organic load of ~0.0006% blended iceberg lettuce (wt/vol) to simulate wash water quality during the early stages of processing. Hence, higher *E. coli* O157:H7 populations would have been expected after 90 s of processing if the organic load in the wash water had been

higher, especially for the chlorine-based sanitizer. *E. coli* O157:H7 populations recovered from the wash water were consistently lower ($P \leq 0.05$) using chlorine, chlorine plus CA, and chlorine plus T-128 compared with water alone, peroxyacetic acid, and mixed peracid. Both chlorine plus CA and chlorine plus T-128 treatments yielded *E. coli* O157:H7 levels that were below the limit of detection, which is similar to the findings of López-Gálvez et al. *(27)* using 40 ppm of chlorine.

This study was designed to assess the efficacy of sanitizers during processing, not to assess long-term pathogen persistence in the wash water. Produce sanitizers are primarily used to minimize cross-contamination during flume washing, with their effectiveness dependent on the type of sanitizer, concentration, temperature, and organic load in the wash water. The pilot-scale processing line used in this study was not equipped with a chiller. Therefore, all processing needed to be conducted at our incoming tap water temperature of 12 to 15°C rather than at the targeted commercial temperature of 4°C. Since sanitizer efficacy against *E. coli* O157:H7 is enhanced at temperatures above 4°C *(53),* our *E. coli* O157:H7 reductions likely exceed those that would be expected in commercial operations.

Levels of *E. coli* O157:H7 recovered from spent centrifugation water containing sanitizers were rarely lower than those seen in sanitizer-free water. Similar *E. coli* O157:H7 populations were recovered from centrifugation water containing peroxyacetic acid, mixed peracid, chlorine, or no sanitizer at all four sampling times. The combination of chlorine and citric acid or T-128 was significantly more effective than the other sanitizers ($P \leq 0.05$) against *E. coli* O157:H7 in centrifugation water collected during the first 20 s; however, after 40 s no significant difference was seen compared with the water control ($P > 0.05$). These results indicate that, whereas populations of *E. coli* O157:H7 may be close to or below the limit of detection in flume water, populations in the centrifugation water were not significantly different than the water control by the end of sample collection. Therefore, spent centrifugation water would be best suited for pathogen testing.

E. coli O157:H7 cells recovered from equipment surfaces after processing reflect those that were present in the film of water on the equipment surface. During processing, the flume tank was in continuous contact with the recirculating wash water, with water contact decreasing during shaker table dewatering and centrifugal drying. Numbers of *E. coli* O157:H7 recovered from surfaces in the centrifugal dryer were not significantly different from the water control when any of the three chlorine-based sanitizer treatments were used, indicating that those surfaces may also be well suited for pathogen testing, depending on the particular sanitizer used.

This study was done to assess the efficacy of commercial produce sanitizers against *E. coli* O157:H7 on lettuce, in wash water, and on equipment surfaces during small-scale processing of iceberg lettuce. Whereas none of the sanitizers were more effective than water alone against *E. coli* O157:H7 on iceberg lettuce at any point during or after processing, it is important to reiterate that sanitizers are designed to reduce the microbial load in wash water rather than on the product. Overall, the populations of *E. coli* O157:H7 recovered in wash water containing peroxyacetic acid or mixed peracid were rarely significantly different than those seen in water alone. However, the three chlorine-based treatments were significantly more effective than water alone at reducing *E. coli* O157:H7 populations in wash water during processing. The wash water used in this study replicated a ''best-case'' scenario for processors due to the extremely low organic load and freshly added sanitizers. Similar studies using higher organic loads will be needed to assess sanitizer efficacy against *E. coli* O157:H7 under conditions that more closely simulate commercial processing.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Financial support for this study was provided by U.S. Department of Agriculture National Integrated Food Safety Initiative grant no. 2007-51110-03812 and Fresh Express, Inc., Salinas, CA. We thank Heinzen Manufacturing, Gilroy, CA, and Dorner Manufacturing, Hartland, WI, for portions of the produce processing line and Chelsea Kaminski, Lin Ren, Paul Sirmeyer, and Jake Thorns, for their technical assistance.

REFERENCES

1. Allende, A., J. McEvoy, Y. Tao, and Y. Luo. 2009. Antimicrobial effect of acidified sodium chlorite, sodium chlorite, sodium hypochlorite, and citric acid on *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 and natural microflora of fresh-cut cilantro. *Food Control* 20:230–234.
2. Allende, A., M. V. Selma, F. Lopez-Galvez, R. Villaescusa, and M. I. Gil. 2008. Impact of wash water quality on sensory and microbial quality, including *Escherichia coli* cross-contamination, of fresh-cut escarole. *J. Food Prot.* 71:2514–2518.
3. Beuchat, L. R. 1998. Surface decontamination of fruits and vegetables eaten raw: a review. Available at: http://www.who.int/foodsafety/publications/fs_management/en/surface_decon.pdf. Accessed 28 August 2012.
4. Beuchat, L. R., B. B. Adler, and M. M. Lang. 2004. Efficacy of clorine and a peroxyacetic acid sanitizer in killing *Listeria monocytogenes* on iceberg and romaine lettuce using simulated commercial processing conditions. *J. Food Prot.* 67:1238–1242.
5. Buchanan, R. L., S. G. Edelson, R. L. Miller, and G. M. Sapers. 1999. Contamination of intact apples after immersion in an aqueous environment containing *Escherichia coli* O157:H7. *J. Food Prot.* 62: 444–450.
6. Buchholz, A. L., G. R. Davidson, B. P. Marks, E. C. D. Todd, and E. T. Ryser. 2012. Quantitative transfer of *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 to equipment during small-scale production of fresh-cut leafy greens. *J. Food Prot.* 75:1184–1197.
7. Buchholz, A. L., G. R. Davidson, B. P. Marks, E. C. D. Todd, and E. T. Ryser. 2012. Transfer of *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 from equipment surfaces to fresh-cut leafy greens during processing in a model pilot-plant production line with sanitizer-free water. *J. Food Prot.* 75:1920–1929.
8. Buchholz, A. L., G. R. Davidson, R. E. Sloup, B. P. Marks, E. C. D. Todd, and E. T. Ryser. 2010. Tracking an *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 contaminated batch of leafy greens through a commercial processing line, T4-02. Abstr. Annu. Meet. IAFP, Anaheim, CA.
9. Burnett, A. B., M. H. Iturriaga, E. F. Escartin, C. A. Pettigrew, and L. R. Beuchat. 2004. Influence of variations in methodology on populations of *Listeria monocytogenes* recovered from lettuce treated with sanitizers. *J. Food Prot.* 67:742–750.
10. California Department of Public Health. 2007. Investigation of an *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 outbreak associated with Dole pre-packaged spinach. Available at: http://www.cdph.ca.gov/pubsforms/Documents/fdb%20eru%20Spnch%20EC%20Dole032007wph.PDF. Accessed 3 October 2012.

11. Carlin, F., and C. Nguyen-The. 1994. Fate of *Listeria monocytogenes* on four types of minimally processed green salads. *Lett. Appl. Microbiol.* 18:222–226.
12. Center for Science in the Public Interest. 2008. Outbreak alert! 2008. Available at: http://www.cspinet.org/new/pdf/outbreak_alert_2008_report_final.pdf. Accessed 13 October 2012.
13. Center for Science in the Public Interest. 2009. The ten riskiest foods regulated by the US Food and Drug Administration. Available at: http://cspinet.org/new/pdf/cspi_top_10_fda.pdf. Accessed 2 October 2012.
14. Centers for Disease Contol and Prevention. 2012. Investigation update: multistate outbreak of *E. coli* O157:H7 infections linked to romaine lettuce. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/ecoli/2011/ecoliO157/romainelettuce/032312/index.html. Accessed 20 February 2013.
15. Chase-Topping, M. E., I. J. McKendrick, M. C. Pearce, P. MacDonald, L. Matthews, J. Halliday, L. Allison, D. Fenlon, J. C. Low, G. Gunn, and M. E. Woolhouse. 2007. Risk factors for the presence of high-level shedders of *Escherichia coli* O157 on Scottish farms. *J. Clin. Microbiol.* 45:1594–1603.
16. Code of Federal Regulations. 2012. Title 21, Part 173.315. Chemicals used in washing or to assist in the peeling of fruits and vegetables. Available at: http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cdrh/cfdocs/cfcfr/cfrsearch.cfm?fr=173.315. Accessed 16 September 2012.
17. Cooley, M., D. Carychao, L. Crawford-Miksza, M. T. Jay, C. Myers, C. Rose, C. Keys, J. Farrar, and R. E. Mandrell. 2007. Incidence and tracking of *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 in a major produce production region in California. *PLoS ONE* 2:e1159.
18. Foley, D. M., A. Dufour, L. Rodriguez, F. Caporaso, and A. Prakash. 2002. Reduction of *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 in shredded iceberg lettuce by chlorination and gamma irradiation. *Radiat. Phys. Chem.* 63:391–396.
19. Food and Agriculture Organization and the World Health Organization. 2010. CODEX Alimentarius: code of hygenic practice for fresh fruits and vegetables. Available at: http://www.codexalimentarius.org/standards/list-of-standards/en/. Accessed 20 February 2013.
20. Gil, M. I., M. V. Selma, F. López-Gálvez, and A. Allende. 2009. Fresh-cut product sanitation and wash water disinfection: problems and solutions. *Int. J. Food Microbiol.* 134:37–45.
21. Herdt, J., and H. Feng. 2009. Aqueous antimicrobial treatments to improve fresh and fresh-cut produce safety, p. 169–190. *In* X. Fan, B. A. Niemira, C. J. Doona, F. E. Feeherry, and R. B. Gravani (ed.), Microbial safety of fresh produce. Wiley-Blackwell, Ames, IA.
22. Herman, K. M., T. L. Ayers, and M. Lynch. 2008. Foodborne disease outbreaks associated with leafy greens, 1973–2006. Available at: http://wwwnc.cdc.gov/eid/pdfs/ICEID2008.pdf. Accessed 10 October 2012.
23. Huang, Y., and H. Chen. 2011. Effect of organic acids, hydrogen peroxide and mild heat on inactivation of *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 on baby spinach. *Food Control* 22:1178–1183.
24. Keskinen, L. A., and B. A. Annous. 2011. Efficacy of adding detergents to sanitizer solutions for inactivation of *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 on romaine lettuce. *Int. J. Food Microbiol.* 147:157–161.
25. Lemons, K. E. 30 July 2009. Antimicrobial compositions and methods of use thereof. U.S. patent 0192231 A1.
26. Li, Y., R. E. Brackett, J. Chen, and L. R. Beuchat. 2001. Survival and growth of *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 inoculated onto cut lettuce before or after heating in chlorinated water, followed by storage at 5 or 15°C. *J. Food Prot.* 64:305–309.
27. López-Gálvez, F., A. Allende, M. V. Selma, and M. I. Gil. 2009. Prevention of *Escherichia coli* cross-contamination by different commercial sanitizers during washing of fresh-cut lettuce. *Int. J. Food Microbiol.* 133:167–171.
28. Luo, Y. 2007. Fresh-cut produce wash water reuse affects water quality and packaged product quality and microbial growth in romaine lettuce. *Hortic. Sci.* 42:1413–1419.
29. Luo, Y., X. Nou, P. Millner, and B. Zhou. 2012. A pilot plant scale evaluation of a new process aid for enhancing chlorine efficacy against pathogen survival and cross-contamination during produce wash. *Int. J. Food Microbiol.* 158:133–139.
30. Luo, Y., X. Nou, Y. Yang, I. Alegre, E. Turner, H. Feng, M. Abadias, and W. Conway. 2011. Determination of free chlorine concentrations needed to prevent *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 cross-contamination during fresh-cut produce wash. *J. Food Prot.* 74:352–358.
31. Lynch, M. F., R. V. Tauxe, and C. W. Hedberg. 2009. The growing burden of foodborne outbreaks due to contaminated fresh produce: risks and opportunities. *Epidemiol. Infect.* 137:307–315.
32. Nou, X., and Y. Luo. 2010. Whole-leaf wash improves chlorine efficacy for microbial reduction and prevents pathogen cross-contamination during fresh-cut lettuce processing. *J. Food Sci.* 75:M283–M290.
33. Nou, X., Y. Luo, L. Hollar, Y. Yang, H. Feng, P. Millner, and D. Shelton. 2011. Chlorine stabilizer T-128 enhances efficacy of chlorine against cross-contamination by *E. coli* O157:H7 and *Salmonella* in fresh-cut lettuce processing. *J. Food Sci.* 76:218–224.
34. Ölmez, H. 2010. Effect of different sanitizing methods and incubation time and temperature on inactivation of *Escherichia coli* on lettuce. *J. Food Saf.* 30:288–299.
35. Palumbo, M. S., J. R. Gorny, D. E. Gombas, L. R. Beuchat, C. M. Bruhn, B. Cassens, P. Delaquis, J. M. Farber, L. J. Harris, K. Ito, M. T. Osterholm, M. Smith, and K. M. J. Swanson. 2007. Recommendations for handling fresh-cut leafy green salads by consumers and retail foodservice operators. *Food Prot. Trends* 27:892–898.
36. Parish, M. E., L. R. Beuchat, T. V. Suslow, L. J. Harris, E. H. Garrett, J. N. Farber, and F. F. Busta. 2003. Methods to reduce/eliminate pathogens from fresh and fresh-cut produce. *Compr. Rev. Food Sci. Food Saf.* 2:161–173.
37. Ryser, E. T., J. Hao, and Z. Yan. 2009. Internalization of pathogens in produce, p. 55–80. *In* X. Fan, B. A. Niemira, C. J. Doona, F. E. Feeherry, and R. B. Gravani (ed.), Microbial safety of fresh produce. Wiley-Blackwell, Ames, IA.
38. Sapers, G. M. 2001. Efficacy of washing and sanitizing methods for disinfection of fresh fruit and vegetable products. *Food Technol. Biotechnol.* 39:305–311.
39. Sapers, G. M. 2009. Disinfection of contaminated produce with conventional washing and sanitizing technology, p. 393–424. *In* G. Sapers, E. Solomon, and K. R. Matthews (ed.), The produce contamination problem: causes and solutions. Elsevier, Burlington, MA.
40. Seo, K. H., and J. F. Frank. 1999. Attachment of *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 to lettuce leaf surface and bacterial viability in response to chlorine treatment as demonstrated by using confocal scanning laser microscopy. *J. Food Prot.* 62:3–9.
41. Shen, C., Y. Luo, X. Nou, G. Bauchan, B. Zhou, Q. Wang, and P. Millner. 2012. Enhanced inactivation of *Salmonella* and *Pseudomonas* biofilms on stainless steel by use of T-128, a fresh-produce washing aid, in chlorinated wash solutions. *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.* 78:6789–6798.
42. Suslow, T. V. 2001. Water disinfection, a practical approach to calculating dose values for preharvest and postharvest applications. Publication 7256. University of California, Davis, Agriculture and Natural Resources. Available at: http://anrcatalog.ucdavis.edu/pdf/7256.pdf. Accessed 22 September 2012.
43. Suslow, T. V. 2006. Making sense of rules governing chlorine contact in postharvest handling of organic produce. Publication 8198. University of California, Davis, Agriculture and Natural Resources. Available at: http://anrcatalog.ucdavis.edu/pdf/8198.pdf. Accessed 22 September 2012.
44. Szabo, E. A., L. Simons, M. J. Coventry, and M. B. Cole. 2003. Assessment of control measures to achieve a food safety objective of less than 100 CFU of *Listeria monocytogenes* per gram at the point of consumption for fresh precut iceberg lettuce. *J. Food Prot.* 66:256–264.
45. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. 1998. Guidance for industry: guide to minimize microbial food safety hazards for fresh fruits and vegetables. Available at: http://www.fda.gov/Food/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/GuidanceDocuments/ProduceandPlanProducts/ucm064574.htm#ii. Accessed 8 September 2012.
46. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. 2009. Guidance for industry: guide to minimize microbial food safety hazards of leafy greens; draft guidance. Available at: http://www.fda.gov/Food/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/GuidanceDocuments/ProduceandPlanProducts/ucm174200.htm#fresh. Accessed 7 September 2012.
47. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. 2013. Standards for the growing, harvesting, packing and holding of produce for human consumption, a

proposed rule. Available at: https://www.federalregister.gov/articles/2013/01/16/2013-00123/standards-for-the-growing-harvesting-packing-and-holding-of-produce-for-human-consumption. Accessed 20 February 2013.

48. Vorst, K. L., E. C. D. Todd, and E. T. Ryser. 2004. Improved quantitative recovery of *Listeria monocytogenes* from stainless steel surfaces using a one-ply composite tissue. *J. Food Prot.* 67:2212–2217.
49. Wachtel, M. R., L. C. Whitehead, and R. E. Mandrell. 2002. Association of *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 with preharvest leaf lettuce upon exposure to contaminated irrigation water. *J. Food Prot.* 65:18–25.
50. Weissinger, W. R., W. Chantarapanont, and L. R. Beuchat. 2000. Survival and growth of *Salmonella baildon* in shredded lettuce and diced tomatoes, and effectiveness of chlorinated water as a sanitizer. *Int. J. Food Microbiol.* 62:123–131.
51. Zeng, W., K. Vorst, W. Brown, B. Marks, F. Perez-Rodriguez, and E. Ryser. 2012. Monte Carlo simulation of *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 and *Listeria monocytogenes* growth in bagged salad greens during commercial transport, retail storage and display, T4-12. Abstr. Annu. Meet. IAFP, Providence, RI.
52. Zhang, G., L. Ma, V. H. Phelan, and M. P. Doyle. 2009. Efficacy of antimicrobial agents in lettuce leaf processing water for control of *Escherichia coli* O157:H7. *J. Food Prot.* 72:1392–1397.
53. Zhang, S., and J. M. Farber. 1996. The effects of various disinfectants against *Listeria monocytogenes* on fresh-cut vegetables. *Food Microbiol.* 13:311–321.

UF UNIVERSITY of FLORIDA
IFAS Extension

HS1164

Microgreens: A New Specialty Crop[1]

Danielle D. Treadwell, Robert Hochmuth, Linda Landrum, and Wanda Laughlin[2]

Frequently called "vegetable confetti," microgreens are young, tender greens that are used to enhance the color, texture, or flavor of salads, or to garnish a wide variety of main dishes (Figs. 1 and 2). Harvested at the first true leaf stage and sold with the stem, cotyledons (seed leaves), and first true leaves attached, they are among a variety of novel salad greens available on the market that are typically distinguished categorically by their size and age. Sprouts, microgreens, and baby greens are simply those greens harvested and consumed in an immature state. Based on size or age of salad crop categories, sprouts are the youngest and smallest, microgreens are slightly larger and older (usually 2 in. tall), and baby greens are the oldest and largest (usually 3–4 in. tall).

Figure 1. Microgreens in this photo are predominantly in the cotyledon stage and are a few days away from harvest.

Figure 2. Microgreens are often termed "vegetable confetti."

Both baby greens and microgreens lack any legal definition. The terms "baby greens" and "microgreens" are marketing terms used to describe their respective categories. Sprouts are germinated seeds and are typically consumed as an entire plant (root, seed, and shoot), depending on the species. For example, sprouts from almond, pumpkin, and peanut reportedly have a preferred flavor when harvested prior to root development. Sprouts are legally defined, and have additional regulations concerning their production and marketing due to their relatively high risk of microbial contamination compared to other greens. Growers interested in producing sprouts for sale need to be aware of the risks and precautions summarized in the FDA publication

1. This document is HS1164, one of a series of the Horticultural Sciences Department, Florida Cooperative Extension Service, Institute of Food and Agricultural Sciences, University of Florida. Original publication date April 2010. Revised July 2013. Visit the EDIS website at http://edis.ifas.ufl.edu.

2. Danielle D. Treadwell, associate professor, Horticultural Sciences; Robert Hochmuth, Extension agent IV, SVAEC; Linda Landrum, retired Extension agent IV, SVAEC; and Wanda Laughlin, senior ag assistant, SVAEC.

The Institute of Food and Agricultural Sciences (IFAS) is an Equal Opportunity Institution authorized to provide research, educational information and other services only to individuals and institutions that function with non-discrimination with respect to race, creed, color, religion, age, disability, sex, sexual orientation, marital status, national origin, political opinions or affiliations. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Cooperative Extension Service, University of Florida, IFAS, Florida A&M University Cooperative Extension Program, and Boards of County Commissioners Cooperating. Nick T. Place , Dean

Guidance for Industry: Reducing Microbial Food Safety Hazards for Sprouted Seeds (FDA 1999).

The crops used for microgreens usually do not include lettuces because they are too delicate and wilt easily. The kinds of crops that are selected for production and sale as microgreens have value in terms of color (like red or purple), unique textures, or distinct flavors. In fact, microgreens are often marketed as specialty mixes, such as "sweet," "mild," "colorful," or "spicy."

Certain crops of microgreens germinate easily and grow quickly. These include cabbage, beet, kale, kohlrabi, mizuna, mustard, radish, swiss chard, and amaranth. Soaking some seeds prior to sowing, such as beets, helps facilitate germination. As many as 80–100 crops and crop varieties have reportedly been used as microgreens (Fig 3). Others that have been used include carrot, cress, arugula, basil, onion, chive, broccoli, fennel, lemongrass, popcorn, buckwheat, spinach, sweet pea, and celery. Growers should evaluate various crop varieties to determine their value as microgreens. Many seed companies are very knowledgeable about the crops and varieties to grow, and a number of them offer organic seed.

Figure 3. A variety of crops can be grown and sold as microgreens.

The commercial marketing of microgreens is mainly targeted toward restaurant chefs or upscale grocery stores. Prices for microgreens generally range from $30 to $50 per pound. The product is packaged in plastic clamshell containers that are typically 4–8 oz by weight but can be sold in 1 lb containers as well.

Production

Microgreens may be grown by individuals for home use. Growing small quantities at home is relatively easy; however, growing and marketing high-quality microgreens commercially is much more difficult. Having the right mix at the perfect stage for harvest is one of the most critical production strategies for success. The time from seeding to harvest varies greatly from crop to crop. When seeding a mixture of crops in a single planting flat, growers should select crops that have a similar growth rate so the entire flat can be harvested at once. Alternatively, growers can seed the various crops singularly and mix them after harvest.

Microgreens can be grown in a standard, sterile, loose, soilless germinating media. Many mixes have been used successfully with peat, vermiculite, perlite, coconut fiber, and others. Partially fill a tray with the media of choice to a depth of 1/2 in. to 1 or 2 in., depending on irrigation programs. Overhead mist irrigation is generally used only through the germination stage in these media systems. After germination, trays should be subirrigated to avoid excess moisture in the plant canopy.

An alternative production system uses one of several materials as a mat or lining to be placed in the bottom of a tray or longer trough. These materials are generally fiberlike and provide an excellent seeding bed. Materials may include burlap or a food-grade plastic specifically designed for microgreens such as those made by Sure to Grow (Beachwood, OH). These mat systems are often used in a commercially available production system using wide NFT-type troughs. The burlap mat may be sufficient alone for certain crops or may require a light topping with a media after seeding. Seeding may be done as a broadcast or in rows. Seeding density is difficult to recommend. Most growers indicate they want to seed as thickly as possible to maximize production, but not too thickly because crowding encourages elongated stems and increases the risk of disease. Most crops require little or no fertilizer, as the seed provides adequate nutrition for the young crop. Some longer-growing microgreen crops, such as micro carrot, dill, and celery, may benefit from a light fertilization applied to the tray bottom. Some of the faster-growing greens, such as mustard cress and chard, may also benefit from a light fertilization because they germinate quickly and exhaust their self-contained nutrient supply quickly. Light fertilization is best achieved by floating each tray of microgreens for 30 seconds in a prepared nutrient solution of approximately 80 ppm nitrogen.

Microgreens are ready for harvest when they reach the first true leaf stage, usually at about 2 in. tall. Time from seeding to harvest can vary greatly by crop from 7 to 21 days. Production in small trays will likely require harvesting with scissors. This is a very time-consuming part of the production cycle and is often mentioned by growers as a major drawback. The seeding mat type of production system has gained popularity with many growers because it facilitates faster harvesting. The mats can be picked up by hand and held vertically while an electric knife or trimmer is used for harvesting, allowing cut microgreens to fall from the mat into a clean harvest container. Harvested microgreens are highly perishable and should be washed and cooled as quickly as possible. Some chefs are asking growers to deliver in the trays or mats and they will cut the microgreens as needed to improve quality. Wash the microgreens using good handling practices for food safety. Microgreens are usually packed in small, plastic clamshell packages and cooled to recommended temperatures for the crops in the mix. Growers should be aware that marketing agreements such as the National Leafy Green Marketing Agreement (NLGMA) have been proposed to reduce the risk of microbial contamination of mature and immature leafy greens. For the current status of the NLGMA, visit http://www.nlgma.org/.

References

Food and Drug Administration. 1999. *Guidance for industry: Reducing microbial food safety hazards for sprouted seeds*. http://www.fda.gov/Food/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/GuidanceDocuments/ProduceandPlanProducts/ucm120244.htm.

Available online at www.sciencedirect.com
ScienceDirect
Meat Science 77 (2007) 136–147
MEAT SCIENCE
www.elsevier.com/locate/meatsci

Cured meat products without direct addition of nitrate or nitrite: what are the issues?

Joseph G. Sebranek [a,*], James N. Bacus [b,1]

[a] Department of Animal Science, Department of Food Science and Human Nutrition, 215 Meat Laboratory, Iowa State University, Ames, IA 50011, United States
[b] Technical Ingredient Solutions, LLC, 3518 NW 97th Blvd., Gainesville, FL 32606, United States

Received 2 March 2007; received in revised form 29 March 2007; accepted 30 March 2007

Abstract

The growing popularity of food products marketed in the United States as "natural" and "organic" has resulted in a proliferation of marketing efforts to meet consumer demands for these foods. Because natural and organic foods are not permitted to use chemical preservatives, the traditional curing agents used for cured meats, nitrate and/or nitrite, cannot be added to natural and organic processed meat products. However, alternative processes that utilize ingredients with high nitrate content, such as vegetable-based ingredients, and a nitrate-reducing starter culture can produce processed meats with very typical cured meat properties. Because it is not possible to analytically measure the amount of nitrite produced by this process, several potential issues deserve consideration. Regulations, for example, should permit labeling that accurately reflects the process and products, manufacturing procedures must be standardized to achieve product consistency, marketing efforts should clearly communicate the nature of these products to consumers, product quality must be maintained, and microbiological safety must be assured.
© 2007 Elsevier Ltd. All rights reserved.

Keywords: Organic; Natural; Cured meats; Nitrite; Nitrate

1. Introduction

In many parts of the world, natural and organic foods have been experiencing an explosive market growth. Natural and organic processed meats have been a very significant part of that growth, and in the United States, have made up the fastest growing category of natural and organic foods (Mitchell, 2006; Organic Trade Association, 2006). Several studies have documented that consumer preferences for organic and natural foods are based on concerns about antibiotics, pesticides, hormones, genetic modifications in plants and animals, and chemical additives that consumers associate with conventionally produced foods (Bourn & Prescott, 2002; Devcich, Pedersen, & Petrie, 2007; Dreezens, Martijn, Tenbult, Kok, & deVries, 2005; Saher, Lindeman, & Hursti, 2006; Siderer, Maquet, & Anklam, 2005; Winter & Davis, 2006). Consumers are willing to pay significant premiums for organic and natural foods. Premiums of 10–40% for organic foods over conventional products are common (Winter & Davis, 2006) but for meat and poultry, premiums may reach 200% (Bacus, 2006) or even more. In one such example, the average retail price for four brands of organic broilers in the Midwest during April and May, 2006 was $3.19/lb. compared to $1.29/lb. for conventionally produced broilers, a 247% difference (Husak, 2007). The large premiums that consumers are willing to pay for natural and organic foods have resulted in a rapid proliferation of new products and increased marketing by retailers (Petrak, 2005).

* Corresponding author. Tel.: +1 515 294 1091; fax: +1 515 294 5066.
E-mail addresses: sebranek@iastate.edu (J.G. Sebranek), jbacus@tingsol.com (J.N. Bacus).
[1] Tel.: +1 352 505 5550.

0309-1740/$ - see front matter © 2007 Elsevier Ltd. All rights reserved.
doi:10.1016/j.meatsci.2007.03.025

In the US, natural and organic foods must be produced and processed according to United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) regulations that define these products. In most cases, natural and organic foods are very similar to conventional products and do not differ in the typical characteristics expected by consumers. However, in the case of processed meat products such as hams, bacon, frankfurters, bologna and others that are typically cured by addition of sodium/potassium nitrite or nitrate, the requirements for natural or organic labeling do not permit addition of nitrite or nitrate. Nitrite, added directly or derived from nitrate, is a unique, distinctive cured meat ingredient for which there is no substitute, consequently significant process and product changes are necessary to produce natural or organic processed meats that provide consumers with the properties expected of traditional cured meat products. These changes, combined with labeling requirements for these products, have resulted in a category of processed meats in the US that is confusing, and perhaps even misleading, to consumers. Further, because of the essential role that nitrite plays in cured meat quality and safety, changes in the products need to be carefully examined in light of the processing changes that are being introduced for manufacturing natural and organic processed meats. Consequently, several considerations including regulatory, manufacturing, marketing, quality and safety issues need to be addressed.

2. Background

2.1. Definitions of natural and organic processed meats

The requirements for processed meats such as hams, bacon, frankfurters and bologna to qualify as natural or organic in the US have resulted in unique approaches to the development of these products. This is because, while ''natural'' and ''organic'' are two separate and distinct categories of meat and poultry products in terms of USDA regulations and labels, neither of these product categories are permitted to be manufactured with added sodium (or potassium) nitrite or nitrate. However, the USDA permits the manufacture of uncured versions of typical cured meats according to the Code of Federal Regulations (2006), 9 CFR 319.2, which reads:

> ''Any product, such as frankfurters and corned beef, for which there is a standard in this part and to which nitrate or nitrite is permitted or required to be added, may be prepared without nitrate or nitrite and labeled with such standard name when immediately preceded with the term ''Uncured'' in the same size and style of lettering as the rest of such standard name: *Provided*, That the product is found by the Administrator to be similar in size, flavor, consistency and general appearance to such products as commonly prepared with nitrate and nitrite: *And providing further*, That labeling for such products complies with the provisions of 317.17 (C) of this subchapter''.

Thus, there is another category of processed meats, separate from ''natural'' and ''organic'', and that category is ''uncured''. The definitions of natural and organic require that ''uncured'' be included on the label for products labeled with a standardized cured product name (i.e., uncured bacon), but it is important to note that not all products labeled ''uncured'' are natural or organic.

Processed meats that are labeled ''natural'' must comply with the definition of the term provided by the USDA Food Standards and Labeling Policy Book (USDA, 2005). This definition requires that a natural product ...

> ...''does not contain any artificial flavor or flavoring, coloring ingredient, or chemical preservative (as defined in 21 CFR 101.22), or any other artificial or synthetic ingredient; and the product and its ingredients are not more than minimally processed''.
>
> The term ''minimally processed'' includes
>
> ''...traditional processes used to make food edible or to preserve it or to make it safe for human consumption, e.g., smoking, roasting, freezing, drying, and fermenting, or those physical processes which do not fundamentally alter the raw product..., e.g. grinding meat...''. (USDA, 2005).

The definition of natural has been controversial. For example, in the 2005 edition of the USDA Food Standards and Labeling Policy Book, a note was added indicating that sugar, sodium lactate (from a corn source) and natural flavorings from oleoresins or extractives are acceptable for ''all natural'' claims (USDA, 2005). However, because lactate is widely recognized as an antimicrobial ingredient, such use may conflict with the ''no chemical preservatives'' requirement for labeling of a product as natural. This was the basis for a petition submitted to the USDA in October, 2006 after which the Agency removed lactate from the guidance statement provided for natural claims. The USDA will, however, consider use of lactate for natural foods on a case-by-case basis for applications where the ingredient may function as a flavoring rather than a preservative. Further, the Agency is currently planning to initiate new rulemaking processes in the near future for the use of ''natural'' to clarify these uses as well as the use of natural claims relative to livestock production practices (O'Connor, 2006).

Products labeled as organic are much better defined and controlled in the US than the products labeled with natural claims because organic products are governed by the USDA Organic Foods Production Act (OFPA), first established in 1990 as part of the 1990 Farm Bill (Winter & Davis, 2006). The OFPA created a National Organic Standards Board, which established a National List of Allowed and Prohibited Substances, and developed National Organic Program Standards. The standards, implemented in 2002, specify methods, practices and substances that may be used for production, processing and handling of organic foods. Meat, for example, must be raised under

organic management and come from a USDA-certified farm. Ingredients used for processed products are clearly defined as permitted or prohibited in the OFPA National List. Organic products may be labeled as; (1) "100% organic" which must contain only organically produced ingredients; (2) "organic" which must contain at least 95% organically produced ingredients; or (3) "made with organic ingredients" which must have at least 70% organic ingredients. Products with less than 70% organic ingredients are not allowed to be labeled as organic and are permitted only to list those ingredients that are organic on the label. Those products that qualify for the "organic" and "100% organic" labeling are permitted to use the USDA organic seal as part of the label.

2.2. Definitions of cured and uncured processed meats

The term "cured" relative to processed meats is universally understood to mean the addition of nitrite or nitrate with salt and other ingredients to meat for improved preservation (Pegg & Shahidi, 2000). While several ingredients including sugar, spices, phosphates and others are typically included in cured meats, it is the addition of nitrite in one form or another that results in the distinctive characteristics of cured meat (Cassens, 1990). The typical color, flavor, shelf life and safety of ham, bacon, frankfurters, bologna and other cured products are so widely recognized by consumers that these product names are considered "standardized" and "traditional" by the USDA for product labeling and to not require any further clarification to communicate the expected product properties to consumers. On the other hand, products that are similar but made without nitrite or nitrate, must be clearly labeled as "uncured" as described earlier. This is because "uncured" versions of standardized products like ham, bacon, frankfurters and bologna are significantly different from the traditional products that they emulate. At the same time, there are a number of processed meats that are traditionally manufactured without nitrite or nitrate, and that are not labeled as uncured because the standardized product name effectively communicates that the product is not cured. Fresh sausage, such as pork sausage, for example, is not labeled as "uncured" because these products are standardized, traditional and the common name is clearly understood.

The advent of natural and organic processed meat products, both of which prohibit direct addition of nitrite or nitrate, but that also resemble traditional cured meat has made it necessary to require "uncured" as part of the traditional product name. However, because current meat processing technology has developed means by which nitrate and nitrite can be indirectly added to these products to achieve very typical cured meat properties, the labeling designations for these products as uncured is confusing and technically inaccurate. Further, because the indirect addition of nitrate and nitrite to natural and organic processed meats has not been thoroughly investigated in terms of nitrite chemistry and subsequent product properties, a number of important questions remain to be answered, particularly in regard to quality and safety.

3. Review of conventional cured meat ingredients and processes

Conventionally – cured meat products are characterized by addition of nitrate and/or nitrite. While other ingredients, particularly sodium chloride, are essential parts of typical cured meat formulations, it is the nitrate/nitrite that provides the distinctive properties that are common to all cured meat products. The role of nitrate/nitrite is so commonly understood in the meat industry that the term "cure" is used as both a noun and a verb, meaning either nitrate/nitrite as chemical entities, or the addition of these ingredients to meat, respectively.

3.1. Nitrate

Numerous reviews of the history of meat curing have suggested that meat curing originally developed from use of salt contaminated with sodium or potassium nitrate (Binkerd & Kolari, 1975; Cassens, 1990; National Academy of Sciences, 1982; Pegg & Shahidi, 2000; Pierson & Smoot, 1982; Sebranek, 1979).

While it is not clear when saltpeter (potassium nitrate) was first recognized as a curing agent, it is clear that nitrate, either as saltpeter or as a contaminant of sodium chloride, was used to cure meat for centuries before research chemists began to unravel the chemistry of meat curing. In the late 1800s, it was discovered that nitrate was converted to nitrite by nitrate-reducing bacteria, and that nitrite was the true curing agent. The first half of the 20th century brought a gradual shift from nitrate to nitrite as the primary curing agent for cured meats as the advantages of faster curing time for increased production capacity became more important, and as nitrite chemistry became better understood. By the early 1970s, relatively little nitrate was being used for cured meats (Binkerd & Kolari, 1975). The late 1960s and early 1970s also brought a watershed event for the cured meat industry when it became obvious that nitrite could result in formation of carcinogenic n-nitrosamines in cured meat. Subsequent research demonstrated that a significant factor in nitrosamine formation was residual nitrite concentration, and consequently, nitrate was eliminated from most curing processes to achieve better control over residual nitrite concentrations (Pegg & Shahidi, 2000). Today, nitrate is rarely used and then only in a few specialty products such as dry cured hams and dry sausage where long, slow curing processes necessitate a long-term reservoir for nitrite that can be slowly released over the course of the process.

3.2. Nitrite

The chemistry of nitrite in cured meat is an extremely complex mixture of interactive chemical reactions involv-

ing several different reactants. Nitrite is a highly reactive compound that can function as an oxidizing, reducing or a nitrosylating agent, and can be converted to a variety of related compounds in meat including nitrous acid, nitric oxide and nitrate (Honikel, 2004). To further complicate understanding of nitrite chemistry, it has become clear that the formation of nitric oxide (NO) from nitrite is a necessary prerequisite for most meat curing reactions (Møller & Skibsted, 2002). Fortunately, fundamental research on nitric oxide has become one of the most active research areas in biology because nitric oxide has been found to play crucial roles in several physiological functions in living organisms. Fundamental research on nitric oxide in biological systems since the early 1990s has facilitated better understanding of nitrite and nitric oxide in cured meat (Møller & Skibsted, 2002; Stamler & Meissner, 2001).

The most effective way to consider nitrite chemistry in cured meat is to consider the practical effects of the addition of nitrite to meat. The first and most obvious effect is that of cured color development. Close examination of the chemical reactions involved with color development immediately make it obvious that the chemistry of nitrite in meat is a phenomenally complex event. For example, nitrite does not act directly as a nitrosylating (transfer of nitric oxide) agent in meat but first forms intermediates such as N_2O_3 (Honikel, 2004)in the mildly acidic conditions typical of postmortem muscle, and NOCl (Fox, Sebranek, & Phillips, 1994; Møller & Skibsted, 2002; Sebranek & Fox, 1985, 1991) in the presence of salt.

Formation of NO from the intermediates is facilitated by reductants such as ascorbate, and the NO will react with the iron of both myoglobin (Fe^{+2}) and metmyoglobin (Fe^{+3}) to form cured meat pigments and cured color. These reactions demonstrate two of the most important factors governing nitrite reactions in conventionally cured meat products; namely pH and reductants. However, several other nitrite reactions are involved in cured meats and contribute to nitric oxide production. For example, when nitrite is added to comminuted meat, the meat quickly turns brown due to metmyoglobin formation because nitrite acts as a strong heme pigment oxidant and is, in turn, reduced to NO. The NO reacts with metmyoglobin and subsequent reduction reactions convert the oxidized heme to reduced nitric oxide myoglobin for typical cured color following cooking. Further, nitrite can also react with sulfhydryl groups on proteins to release nitric oxide in an oxidation–reduction reaction that results in a disulfide (Pegg & Shahidi, 2000).

In addition to the above reactions of nitrite in meat, all of which affect the rate and/or extent of cured color development, nitrite plays a key role in cured meat as a bacteriostatic and bacteriocidal agent. Nitrite is strongly inhibitory to anaerobic bacteria, most importantly *Clostridium botulinum* and contributes to control of other micro organisms such as *Listeria monocytogenes*. The effects of nitrite and the likely inhibitory mechanism differs in different bacterial species (Tompkin, 2005). The effectiveness of nitrite as an antibotulinal agent is dependent on several environmental factors including pH, sodium chloride concentration, reductants and iron content among others (Tompkin, 2005). While the means by which nitrite achieves microbial inhibition is not clear and many mechanisms have been proposed, all of the factors that impact nitrite inhibitory effects are also important to the known reactions that generate nitric oxide for cured color. Thus, the reaction sequences involving nitric oxide are probably an important part of the antimicrobial role of nitrite in cured meat. For example, some researchers have suggested that nitrous acid (HNO_2) and/or nitric oxide (NO) may be responsible for the inhibitory effects of nitrite (Tompkin, 2005). Because it appears that nitrite reactivity is key to microbial inhibition (one indicator of this is the strong dependence on pH), there has been some question whether ingoing or residual nitrite is most critical to antimicrobial effects. Tompkin (2005) concluded that residual nitrite at the time of product temperature abuse is critical to antibotulinal effects and that depletion of residual nitrite during product storage will reach some point at which inhibitory effects are also depleted.

The nitrite reaction sequences involved with cured color development probably also play a key role in the strong anti-oxidant function of nitrite in cured meat, because proposed mechanisms for the antioxidant effect of nitrite include reaction with heme proteins and metals, and formation of nitroso- and nitrosyl-compounds that have antioxidant properties (Pegg & Shahidi, 2000). It is likely that these proposed mechanisms are dependent upon the same initial reactions of nitrite that form nitric oxide for cured color.

Nitrite is also responsible for the production of characteristic cured meat flavor, though this is probably the least well understood aspect of nitrite chemistry (Pegg & Shahidi, 2000). It is easy to distinguish cooked, cured ham from fresh roast pork on the basis of flavor but the chemical identity of distinguishing flavor components in cured meat has eluded numerous researchers. Some of the flavor difference may be due to the suppression of lipid oxidation by nitrite but other antioxidants do not produce cured meat flavor. If nitrite does, in fact, form some volatile flavor factors, this would represent yet another reaction product of nitrite in cured meat.

In addition to the nitrite reactions which result in cured meat color, microbial inhibition, antioxidant effects and flavor, it has been demonstrated that addition of nitrite to meat results in formation of nitrate and nitrogen gas as well as reaction with carbohydrates and lipids (Honikel, 2004; Pegg & Shahidi, 2000).

The point of this brief discussion of nitrite chemistry and the functions of nitrite in cured meat is to emphasize that nitrite is a highly reactive ingredient when combined with meat, and results in a complex mixture of reaction products. Because nitrite, particularly as nitric oxide, so readily reacts with a wide variety of substrates, reaction kinetics could be an important determinant of how nitrite

is proportioned among the various competitive substrates and reaction products. A slow formation of nitrite (such as from nitrate) in meat might be significantly different in terms of nitrite reaction products than the direct, one-time addition of a full load of nitrite. If, for example, the fastest-reacting substrates consumed a greater share of the nitrite during slow nitrite formation than in the case where nitrite is added directly, then the end products of the more reactive substrates might achieve greater final concentration.

3.3. Past and current safety issues associated with nitrite

Issues that have been raised concerning the safety of using nitrate and nitrite for cured meat have included chemical toxicity, formation of carcinogens in food or after ingestion, and reproductive and developmental toxicity. None of these issues represent relevant concerns for nitrate or nitrite in light at the current regulated levels of use in processed meats. While nitrite is recognized as a potentially toxic compound, and there have been cases where nitrite was mistakenly substituted for other compounds in food or drink at concentrations great enough to induce toxicity symptoms, the normally controlled use of nitrite in processed meats represents no toxicity risk.

However, the issue of carcinogenic nitrosamines formed from nitrite in cured meat was a very serious concern in the 1970s. Fortunately, changes in manufacturing practices and reduced levels of nitrite used in curing solved the problem of nitrosamine formation in cured meat. Yet, a background concern about nitrite has lingered, and in the 1990s, a series of epidemiological studies reported that consumption of cured meat was related to childhood leukemia and brain cancer (Peters et al., 1994; Preston-Martin & Lijinsky, 1994; Preston-Martin et al., 1996; Sarasua & Savitz, 1994). Further, in 1998, nitrite was proposed as a developmental and reproductive toxicant under California's Proposition 65 (Safe Drinking Water and Toxic Enforcement Act). Fortunately, both issues (nitrite as a carcinogen and as a developmental/reproductive toxicant) have been largely resolved by subsequent studies and careful scientific review (Milkowski, 2006).

The issue of ingested nitrate and nitrite first arose in the 1970s when it was recognized that carcinogenic nitrosamines could be formed in the stomach following ingestion. Subsequent work has shown that less than 5% of the nitrite and nitrate typically ingested comes from cured meat, the rest coming from vegetables and saliva (Archer, 2002; Cassens, 1997a; Milkowski, 2006). Nevertheless, in 2006, the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) concluded that "Ingested nitrate or nitrite under conditions that result in endogenous nitrosation is probably carcinogenic to humans" (Coughlin, 2006). While the IARC report is still in progress, the conclusions are likely to ramp up questions and concerns about nitrite as a food additive. In light of the anticipated challenges to nitrite in cured meat, it is imperative that as much information as possible is developed for all processed meat applications where nitrite and/or nitrate have a role.

3.4. Current US regulations on nitrite and nitrate

Current regulations on use of nitrite and nitrate in the United States vary depending on the method of curing used and the product that is cured. For comminuted products, the maximum ingoing concentration of sodium or potassium nitrite is 156 parts per million (ppm) or 0.25 oz. per 100 lbs. (7 g/45.4 kg), based on the green weight of the meat block (USDA, 1995). Maximum ingoing nitrate for these products is 1718 ppm. Sodium and potassium nitrite and nitrate are limited to the same amount despite the greater molecular weight of the potassium salts, which means that less nitrite or nitrate will be included when the potassium salt is used. For immersion cured, and massaged or pumped products, maximum ingoing sodium or potassium nitrite and nitrate concentrations are 200 ppm and 700 ppm, respectively, again based on the green weight of the meat block. Dry cured products are limited to 625 ppm and 2187 ppm of nitrite and nitrate respectively. If nitrite and nitrate are both used for a single product, the ingoing limits remain the same for each but the combination must not result in more than 200 ppm of analytically measured nitrite, calculated as sodium nitrite in the finished product.

Bacon is an exception to the general limits for curing agents because of the potential for nitrosomine formation. For pumped and/or massaged bacon without the skin, 120 ppm of sodium nitrite or 148 ppm of potassium nitrite is required along with 550 ppm of sodium ascorbate or sodium erythorbate which is also required. It is important to note that this is a specifically required amount whereas other nitrite limits are maximum amounts. To accommodate variation in pumping procedures and brine drainage from pumped products, the regulations for pumped and/or massaged bacon permit ±20% of the target concentrations at the time of injecting or massaging. For example, sodium nitrite concentrations within the range of 96–144 ppm are acceptable. Nitrate is not permitted for any bacon curing method. There are two exceptions to these regulations for pumped and/or massaged bacon: first, 100 ppm of sodium nitrite (or 123 ppm of potassium nitrite) with an "appropriate partial quality control program" is permitted and, second, 40–80 ppm of sodium nitrite or 49–99 ppm of potassium nitrite is permitted if sugar and a lactic acid starter culture are included. Immersion cured bacon is limited to 120 ppm of sodium nitrite or 148 ppm of potassium nitrite while dry cured bacon is limited to 200 ppm or 246 ppm, respectively. For bellies cured with the skin on, nitrite and reductant concentrations must be reduced by 10%, based on the assumption that skin comprises approximately 10% of the belly weight.

It is important to note that the regulations also require a minimum of 120 ppm of ingoing nitrite for all cured "Keep Refrigerated" products "unless safety is assured by some

other preservation process, such as thermal processing, pH or moisture control''. The establishment of minimum ingoing nitrite concentration is considered critical to subsequent product safety. This is a significant consideration for natural and organic cured meat products.

On the other hand, for cured products that are processed to ensure shelf stability (stored at ambient temperature and do not require refrigeration), there is no minimum ingoing nitrite level. The USDA Processing Inspector's Calculations Handbook (USDA, 1995) suggests that, for shelf-stable products, ''...40 ppm nitrite is useful in that it has some preservative effect. This amount has also been shown to be sufficient for color-fixing purposes...''.

4. Ingredients used for natural and organic cured meats

Because of the negative perceptions of nitrite-cured meat held by some consumers, the ''uncured'' natural and organic versions of typical cured meats have enjoyed wide-spread market acceptance. A survey of 56 commercial ''uncured'' meat products including bacon, ham, frankfurters, bologna, braunschweiger, salami, Polish sausage, Andouille sausage and snack sticks showed that most of these products demonstrated typical cured meat color and appearance (Sindelar, 2006b). Review of the product ingredient statements showed that sea salt, evaporated cane juice, raw sugar or turbinado sugar, lactic acid starter culture, natural spices or natural flavorings, and celery juice or celery juice concentrate were used in many of the products.

Analyses of samples of four selected commercial brands each of natural or organic bacon, hams and frankfurters showed that all samples except one sample of bacon contained residual nitrite at concentrations ranging from 0.9 ppm to 9.2 ppm. Residual nitrate was found in all products at concentrations of 6.8 ppm to 44.4 ppm (Sindelar, 2006a). Residual nitrite was lower in most of the natural or organic products at the time of sampling than in comparable commercial products made with conventional addition of nitrite. Other cured meat properties including instrumental color, cured pigment concentration, lipid oxidation and sensory properties were, in general, similar for the natural or organic products relative to the conventionally cured products but greater variation in the natural and organic products was obvious. Most notable was low color values, low cured pigment content and low sensory scores for those products that contained little or no residual nitrite. It is important to note that because these were commercial products selected at retail, the time of manufacture and storage history of each was unknown. Nevertheless, these results suggest that: (1) there is wide variation among the natural and organic processed meats that simulate conventionally cured products; and (2) a large majority of natural and organic processed meats demonstrate typical cured meat properties, including cured color, flavor and significant concentrations of residual nitrite and nitrate. Thus, it is clear that nitrite and nitrate are being introduced to these products indirectly as components of other ingredients.

4.1. Unique ingredients in natural and organic processed meats

The most common ingredient observed in review of the product labels of natural and organic processed meats was sea salt. Sea salt is derived directly from evaporation of sea water, unrefined without addition of free-flow additives and retains the natural trace minerals characteristic of the source (Heinerman & Anderson, 2001; Kuhnlein, 1980). Several varieties of sea salt are available and differ depending on the geographical origin of the water used and the mineral content (Saltworks, 2006). While sea salt has been suggested as a likely source of nitrate, limited analytical information suggested that nitrate content of sea salt is relatively low. Herrador, Sayago, Rosales, and Asuero (2005) reported that Mediterranean sea salt contained 1.1 ppm of nitrate and 1.2 ppm of nitrite. Cantoni, Berretta, and Bianchi (1978) analyzed 10 samples each of 3 grades of sea salt and found nitrate and nitrite concentrations of 0.3–1.7 ppm and 0–0.45 ppm, respectively.

The second most common ingredient observed in natural and organic processed meat ingredient lists was raw sugar, most often shown as turbinado sugar. Turbinado sugar is a raw sugar obtained from evaporation of sugar cane juice followed by centrifugation to remove surface molasses. Remaining molasses gives turbinado sugar a light brown color and flavor similar to brown sugar. While it seems possible that raw sugar could include nitrate, there appears to be no evidence of significant nitrate or nitrite concentrations in raw sugar.

Natural flavorings or spices, and celery juice or celery juice concentrate were frequently listed as ingredients, and because these are plant/vegetable products, the potential contribution of nitrate from these sources is very significant. Vegetables are well-known as a source of nitrate with concentrations as high as 1500–2800 ppm (National Academy of Sciences, 1981) in celery, lettuce and beets. Vegetable juices and vegetable powders are commercially available and may be used as ingredients in natural and organic foods. Analysis of some commercially available vegetable juices showed that carrot, celery, beet and spinach juice contained 171 ppm, 2114 ppm, 2273 ppm and 3227 ppm of nitrate respectively (Sebranek, 2006). After 10 days of storage at room temperature, nitrate levels in these juices declined by 14–22%. Nitrite was not detected initially but concentrations of 128–189 ppm of nitrite were found after 10 days at room temperature, probably resulting from bacterial reduction of nitrate. Analysis of commercial celery juice powder indicated a nitrate content of 27,462 ppm or about 2.75%, reflecting the increased concentration following drying (Sindelar, 2006a). Clearly, vegetable products offer the greatest potential to introduce natural sources of nitrate into processed meats. Juices and powders have advantages in supplying nitrate in

concentrated form. Celery juice and celery powder appear to be highly compatible with processed meat products because of very little vegetable pigment (as opposed to beets, for example) and a mild flavor profile similar to raw celery that does not detract greatly from finished product flavor.

A critical ingredient for processed meats with natural nitrate sources is a nitrate-reducing bacterial culture if typical cured meat properties are the final objective. The necessity of bacterial reduction of nitrate to nitrite for meat curing has long been recognized, and nitrate-reducing cultures have been commercially available for several years. Most applications of these cultures have been for dry sausage where a long-term reservoir of nitrite during drying is desirable and where subtle flavor contributions from the culture are considered important (Olesen, Meyer, & Stahnke, 2004). The lactic acid starter cultures used for fermented sausage, primarily *Lactobacillus plantarum* and *Pediococcus acidilactici*, do not reduce nitrate. However, cultures of coagulase-negative cocci such as *Kocuria* (formerly *Micrococcus*) *varians*, *Staphylococcus xylosus*, *Staphylococcus carnosus* and others will reduce nitrate to nitrite. These organisms can achieve nitrate reduction at 15–20 °C but are much more effective at temperatures over 30 °C (Casaburi, Blaiotta, Mauriello, Pepe, & Villani, 2005). The typical recommended holding temperature for commercial nitrate-reducing cultures is 38–42 °C to minimize the time necessary for adequate nitrite formation. Recent research has documented that time is a critical parameter in the development of typical cured meat properties from natural sources of nitrate. Sindelar (2006a) reported that holding time at 38 °C was more critical than the amount of naturally-added nitrate for development of cured meat properties in frankfurters and hams. Time appeared to be more critical for the small diameter frankfurters that reached internal temperature of 38 °C quickly than for the large diameter hams where internal temperature increased to 38 °C more slowly.

Sindelar, Cordray, Sebranek, Love, and Ahn (in press a) evaluated several quality characteristics of frankfurter-style cooked sausages manufactured with starter culture and either 0.2% or 0.4% celery juice powder, each held at 38 °C for either 30 min or 120 min. The products were evaluated during 90 days of refrigerated, vacuum-packaged storage and compared with conventionally processed products manufactured at the same time with added sodium nitrite. Color measurements (Hunter a^+ values reflectance ratios, cured pigment concentrations) indicated that treatments with short incubation time resulted in less cured color/redness than the nitrite-cured control though this difference was not always significant. Cured color/redness was comparable to the nitrite-cured control with the longer incubation time for the first 14 days following manufacturing but the difference became non-significant during extended storage. Residual nitrite following incubation was dramatically different with 5.6 ppm and 7.7 ppm found for the 0.2% and 0.4% celery powder levels, respectively, after 30 min but 24.5 ppm and 46.0 ppm observed after 120 min. No differences were noted for lipid oxidation between any of the treatments and the control. The nitrite-cured control received the highest sensory scores though differences were not significant for all sensory properties.

A similar experiment with hams (Sindelar, Cordray, Sebranek, Love, & Ahn, in press b) was conducted using either 0.2% or 0.35% celery powder and incubation time of 0 min or 120 min. The treatment with no incubation time was included because the extended thermal process (3 hrs., 35 min.) used for hams relative to small diameter frankfurter-style sausage was expected to result in adequate nitrate reduction by the culture. Results showed that there were no treatment differences in objective color measurements or cured pigment concentrations and all products were similar in color properties to the nitrite-cured control. Residual nitrite, following the 120 minute incubation for the 0.2% and 0.35% celery juice powder additions, was 19.5 ppm and 36.1 ppm, respectively. The residual nitrite was significantly less for the hams with celery juice powder (21.0–36.0 ppm at day 0; 7.2–21.3 ppm after 90 days) relative to the nitrite-cured control (63.4 ppm at day 0: 34.1 ppm after 90 days). However, residual nitrite was greater in hams with a greater amount of added celery juice (27.7–36.0 ppm from 0.35% celery powder vs. 19.3–21.0 ppm from 0.20% celery powder at day 0 compared with 11.7–21.3 ppm vs. 7.2–8.8 ppm, respectively, for each after 90 days). Sensory panel evaluation indicated that the greater celery powder treatment (0.35%) resulted in greater vegetable aroma and flavor with less ham aroma and flavor. The treatments with a low level of celery powder (0.2%) were similar to the nitrite-cured control for all sensory properties evaluated.

The authors concluded that the celery juice powder/starter culture treatment was an effective alternative to the direct addition of sodium nitrite to small-diameter, frankfurter-style cured sausage but that incubation time at 38 °C is an important factor for product quality. The celery juice powder/starter culture treatment was also effective for hams but in this case the amount of celery juice powder proved to be more critical. For large diameter products such as hams, it appears that the slow temperature increase that is part of a typical thermal process may provide enough time for the culture to achieve nitrate-to-nitrite reduction. Further, the delicate flavor profile of hams makes these products more susceptible to flavor contributed by vegetable products.

The authors also pointed out that the concentration of celery juice powder used (0.2%, 0.35% and 0.4% – total formulation weight basis) could provide, with 100% nitrate-to-nitrite conversion, maximum ingoing nitrite concentrations of 69 ppm, 120 ppm and 139 ppm (meat block basis), respectively, based on the initial nitrate concentration of 27,462 ppm in the celery powder. Because these nitrite concentrations are, at best, significantly less than the 156–200 ppm normally included in cured comminuted

products or injected products, it seems likely that product quality differences could occur in some circumstances. It is also worth noting that the actual amounts of nitrite formed from nitrate when natural nitrate sources are used could be a concern relative to microbiological safety. The shelf life of processed meats manufactured with natural nitrate sources in generally less than nitrite-cured products because less nitrite is present and other typical preservatives such as phosphates, lactate, curing accelerators and antioxidants are not included (Bacus, 2006).

Ingredients that might be considered as curing adjuncts for natural or organic processed meats include vinegar, lemon juice solids, and cherry powder. Acidulants such as vinegar have potential to accelerate nitrite reactions because of the impact of pH. However, reducing pH in these products is also a concern for reduced moisture retention because phosphates and many of the traditional water binders cannot be used for natural or organic products. Lemon juice solids or powder are typically significant sources of citric acid which could have similar pH effects as vinegar. Cherry powder, on the other hand, is high in ascorbic acid which functions as a strong nitrite reductant but does not have a large impact on product pH.

An evaluation of a cured pork product manufactured with a natural nitrate source (celery powder) and with or without 0.28% cherry powder showed that including the cherry powder reduced residual nitrite by about 50% (Baseler, 2007). Residual nitrite declined from 61 ppm to 32 ppm during 12 weeks of storage for a nitrite-cured control, 18–10 ppm for the celery powder treatment and 10–3 ppm for the celery powder/cherry powder treatment. Addition of cherry powder did not alter the product pH. Other product properties (color, lipid oxidation) were not consistently different though the nitrite-cured treatment showed greater redness (Hunter a^* values) after about 4 weeks of storage.

Natural antioxidants such as rosemary may be used to provide flavor protection and to retard lipid oxidation in processed meats. However, these compounds do not contribute directly to nitrate/nitrite reactions in meat systems. Further, it appears that the nitrite generated from natural nitrate sources as reported by Sindelar et al. (in press a, in press b) was sufficient to provide strong antioxidant effects as typically observed in nitrite-cured meats. Past research has shown that as little as 50 ppm added nitrite has a highly significant effect on lipid oxidation (Morrissey & Techivangana, 1985). Thus, relatively small amounts of nitrite formed from nitrate probably provide an important antioxidant role in natural and organic processed meats.

4.2. Processes for naturally-cured meats

Most processors that utilize ''natural curing'' are following processing procedures that are, in general, similar to those processes that include chemical nitrites and nitrates. Naturally-cured products typically utilize natural sources of nitrate, but some natural ingredients may also contain nitrite. If sufficient nitrite is consistently available from a natural source, no changes in the normal process are required.

Naturally-cured meat products that utilize natural ingredients for a nitrate source need an ingredient that contains a relatively high natural nitrate content. The nitrate ion is much more available, more consistent in concentration and more stable than nitrite, and can be found in a wide variety of natural ingredients. When using a natural nitrate source, conversion of the nitrate to nitrite is required. Typically, this conversion is accomplished by specific microorganisms (with a nitrate reductase enzyme), as described earlier, that are also acceptable food ingredients. When using these microorganisms, the conversion process requires time, with the specific amount of time depending upon the temperature, the environment, and the concentration of the reactants, namely the microorganisms and the naturally-occurring nitrate. The conversion time can be decreased by increasing the reactant concentrations with the amount of starter culture the most critical.

In all natural curing processes, good distribution of both the nitrate source and the starter culture is essential to achieve uniform curing. The natural nitrate source, if dry, is usually either blended with the dry seasoning component for comminuted products, or added directly to curing brines. The starter culture commonly is diluted first with good quality water (i.e. distilled, or low in chlorine or other bacteriocidal chemicals) prior to the addition to comminuted products (the USDA permits a maximum 0.5% combined water and starter culture without labeling the added water) or may also be added directly to curing brines. Also, it is recommended that the starter culture should not be pre-blended with anything that might affect viability (i.e. spices, salt), and thus the nitrate-reducing activity of the culture. The naturally-occurring nitrate is soluble, but the starter culture is not soluble, being water-dispersible, therefore some agitation is recommended for brines to achieve optimal distribution of the culture in the meat product. With curing brines, the pH of the brine is critical to achieving optimal natural curing as well as final product texture, because the phosphates or other buffering agents typically used with nitrite-added products cannot be included for products labeled natural or organic. Generally, low pH brines (i.e. <5.5) are not desirable, thus the pH effect of any added natural ingredients should be considered. With comminuted meat products, the pH effect of directly-added ingredients is not as critical due to the buffering capacity of the meat. Liquid sources of naturally-occurring nitrates (vegetable juices) also are utilized but these ingredients pose some manufacturing issues. Typically, most of these liquids are not shelf stable, and are supplied in frozen form. Secondly, the added water that is a component of the juices must be considered.

For small diameter cooked sausage, formulation and processing are essentially the same as for nitrite-added products, except for the nitrate source and the culture, and a smokehouse process that includes an ''incubation''

period of about 1 h at 42 °C to achieve nitrate reduction prior to a smoke-cook thermal process. For injected products, the physical injection of the brine with the culture is critical because the culture will not migrate significantly from injection sites. Consequently, good distribution by injection is necessary to avoid uncured spots. Increased injection percentage of brine is generally preferred to facilitate better distribution. For thermal processing, no ''incubation'' period is likely to be necessary for large diameter products due to the longer process time involved with relatively slow increase in internal temperature. As product diameter is decreased, the heat process may need to be adjusted to achieve optimal nitrate conversion. With injected bellies, for example, a short ''incubation'' period at 42–46 °C may be necessary prior to the usual heating cycle. Because bacon is not fully cooked, relatively high bacterial counts from the added culture will remain in the finished product. Fermented sausage products do not typically require any adjustments in processing because the fermentation step already incorporated into the process provides adequate nitrate conversion. Because most starter cultures, particularly in the US consist of lactic acid-producing bacteria only, it is imperative to confirm that the added starter culture is composed of a mixed culture including nitrate-reducing organisms as well as those included to ferment the added sugars. Many mixed starter cultures are available to accomplish both functions, or the nitrate-reducing culture can be added ''on top'' of a currently used acid-producing culture.

5. Current issues with natural and organic cured meats

5.1. Regulatory

The current US regulatory requirements concerning ''organic'' meat products are well defined, thus processors desiring to make such products must adhere to a fixed set of regulations outlining permitted ingredients. With ''natural'' meat products, however, the rules for permitted ingredients recently have become more confusing. The petition submitted to the USDA in October, 2006, suggested that the 2005 revisions to the agency's ''natural'' policy created inconsistencies by allowing foods carrying the ''natural'' label to contain synthetic ingredients and preservatives. Much of the concern expressed by the petitioner was the allowance of sodium and potassium lactates in ''natural'' products, since these ingredients would be considered ''chemical preservatives''. The petition to the USDA proposed that extensive rulemaking should be initiated for meat and poultry products labeled as ''natural'' in much the same way that had been done with products labeled as ''organic''. Currently, the USDA has begun the rulemaking process for new regulations on natural products with a public meeting in Washington in December, 2006, and a comment period that concluded in March, 2007.

The issue of lactates as ''chemical preservatives'' also raised the issue of other dual-function ingredients, whereas the ingredient may be considered as a natural ingredient for flavor and/or function, but can also have a dual function as a ''natural'' preservative. The issue of ''natural preservative'' vs. ''chemical preservative'' has not been defined, as yet. Many natural compounds that exist in the environment can serve to inhibit microorganisms, retard oxidation, and thus ''preserve'' the product and would be valuable ingredients in food products that are labeled as ''natural''. Until this issue of ''natural'' vs. ''chemical'' preservatives is resolved, the current US regulatory environment is retarding innovative product development and may compromise food safety as well.

5.2. Manufacturing

When manufacturing ''natural'' and ''organic'' meat products using natural ingredients, the inherent variability of natural ingredients must be considered. In the natural curing process, whereby naturally-occurring nitrates are converted by starter cultures to nitrites, the concentration of the nitrate in the source plus the nitrate-reducing activity of the starter culture will effect the degree of curing achieved. Typically, in products cured with direct addition of sodium nitrite in the US, the ingoing nitrite is limited to 156 ppm in most meat products and 120 ppm in injected bacon. In naturally-cured meat products, the ingoing nitrate level is most often between 40 ppm and 60 ppm, thus there is, at best, significantly less nitrite in these products than in the typical nitrite-cured products. Measurable residual nitrite concentrations in both types of cured products are often similar without major differences in color or color stability. However, product quality will be very dependent upon actual nitrite formation in the product during the nitrate reduction phase of the process. While reduced shelf-life has been observed in naturally-cured meats, a significant part of the change is probably due to the lack of other traditional ingredients that are not permitted in ''natural'' products (i.e. phosphate, ascorbate, erythorbate, citric acid, synthetic antioxidants) as well as reduced concentration of nitrite.

5.3. Marketing

The issue of consumer understanding of what is meant by ''natural'' meat products is difficult to define. Many consumers may not comprehend that natural ingredients often contain naturally-occurring chemicals virtually identical in chemical nature to those chemicals synthetically produced. One of the current concerns with ''naturally-cured'' meat and poultry products is that these products often contain residual nitrate and nitrite, even though labeled as ''no nitrates or nitrites added''. According to the US Code of Federal Regulations (2006) in 9 CFR 319.2, the processor has no choice but to label such products (i.e. ''... to which nitrite or nitrate is permitted or required to be added...'') as ''uncured'' and no ''nitrates or nitrites added'' even though the processor may be utilizing a natural curing process.

To provide the consumer with the most accurate information, more appropriate labeling would be to use a term such as ''naturally-cured'' and eliminate the ''uncured'' and ''no nitrates or nitrites added'' requirement that currently exists in the US.

5.4. Quality

The quality characteristics expected of traditional cured meats that are unique to these products include the reddish-pink color of cooked denatured nitrosylhemochrome, a flavor that is distinct from uncured products, and long-term flavor protection resulting from the strong antioxidant effect of nitrite on meat systems. The fixation of desirable color is the first and most obvious effect of nitrite when added to meat and is considered an essential function because color is a critical component affecting consumer retail purchases (Cornforth & Jayasingh, 2004). As little as 2–14 ppm of nitrite (depending on species) can induce pink coloration in cooked meats, though at these levels the color is often sporadic and likely to fade with time. Extensive research in the 1970s showed that 25–50 ppm of ingoing nitrite was adequate to develop relatively stable cured color (National Academy of Sciences, 1982). While there are indications that cured color may be less intense with 40–50 ppm of nitrite instead of 150–200 ppm depending on product type, 40–50 ppm is generally considered adequate for cured color development in most products. Thus, it would appear that cured color development can be achieved relatively easily in processed meat using natural sources of nitrate and a nitrate-reducing culture. A related question, however, concerns the long-term stability of the cured color formed in these products. One of the difficulties with assessing potential cured color intensity or stability with nitrate-based cures is that the absolute amount of nitrite formed from nitrate cannot be determined due to the reactive nature of nitrite in meat. Sindelar et al. (in press a) reported that for frankfurter-type sausages, products made with celery powder and culture had 9.3–31.9 ppm of residual nitrate remaining when 69 ppm of nitrate was added as part of the celery powder, and 12.2–81.4 ppm when 139 ppm was added. So, if 100% of the nitrate that was depleted was in fact reduced to nitrite, the ingoing nitrite concentrations ranged from 37 ppm to 127 ppm. This is sufficient nitrite to generate desirable cured meat color characteristics in most processed meat products. Similar results were observed for color with hams (Sindelar et al., in press b) where the residual nitrate concentrations suggested formation of nitrite in the range of 45–119 ppm. Thus, the quality of cured color in terms of intensity and stability is not likely to be a major issue in processed meats using natural sources of nitrate if appropriate processing procedures are followed to achieve nitrate reduction, and if adequate packaging (oxygen removal by vacuum or gas flushing and high oxygen-barrier films) is used (Møller et al., 2003).

Cured flavor is an important quality attribute of cured meats that is derived from addition of nitrite, though the chemical nature of the flavor has never been established. It is clear, however, that relatively low concentrations of nitrite result in significant cured flavor. Several researchers have reported acceptable cured meat flavor in products formulated with 40 ppm of ingoing nitrite (Pegg & Shahidi, 2000). In a series of reports, MacDonald, Gray, Stanley, and Usborne (1980), MacDonald, Gray, Kakuda, and Lee (1980) and MacDonald, Gray, and Gibbins (1980) concluded that addition of 50 ppm of nitrite to hams was sufficient to produce significant cured meat flavor and antioxidant protection. Thus, in addition to color, it appears that 40–50 ppm or more of ingoing nitrite will result in a significant flavor contribution to cured meat.

The third quality contribution of nitrite to cured meat is the often-overlooked, but highly effective role of nitrite as an antioxidant, and it is clear that nitrite is again effective at relatively low concentrations. Morrissey and Techivangana (1985), for example, using cooked, ground beef, pork, chicken and fish muscle, reported that 50 ppm of nitrite reduced TBA values by 50–64% for beef, pork and chicken, and about 35% for fish. Nitrite concentrations of 100 ppm resulted in TBA reductions of 57–72%, and 200 ppm reduced TBA values by 87–91%. There was a very clear relationship between saturated:unsaturated fat ratios and the TBA values, with more unsaturated fats resulting in greater TBA values regardless of the nitrite concentration. While nitrite is effective as an antioxidant at 50 ppm, it is more effective at greater concentrations up to 200 ppm. A point to note is that the antioxidant function of nitrite in cured meat, while highly effective, is not as unique as the color and flavor contributions. There are a number of other antioxidants including natural compounds that can protect meat lipids from oxidation and flavor deterioration.

If at least 50 ppm of nitrite is formed from nitrate during processing of meat products with natural nitrate sources, it appears that the typical quality characteristics expected of cured meat (color, flavor, flavor stability) will be achieved. A question that is more difficult to answer is the long-term stability of those quality characteristics. It is well recognized that when nitrite is fully depleted from cured meat, color fading and flavor changes typically occur. Some residual nitrite is essential to maintaining typical cured meat properties during extended product storage, and 5–15 ppm residual nitrite has been reported for commercial cured meats in the US (Cassens, 1997b). It is important to keep in mind that packaging and environmental conditions, particularly temperature and exposure to light, are critical to long-term cured meat quality, and become more critical when residual nitrite is reduced.

5.5. Safety

The safety of processed meats that simulate traditional cured meats by using natural sources of nitrate is a significant issue for two reasons; first, nitrite is a very effective

antimicrobial agent, particularly for preventing toxin production by *C. botulinum* and second; residual nitrite concentration is a well-known risk factor in the potential formation of carcinogenic nitrosamines. In both cases, ingoing and residual nitrite concentrations must be carefully controlled to provide product safety.

The antimicrobial role of nitrite in cured meat has been well documented. While nitrite plays a key role in inhibition of *C. botulinum*, extensive research has demonstrated that pH, reductants (ascorbate and erythorbate), salt, phosphates and thermal processing are all highly interactive with nitrite for achieving inhibitory effects (Tompkin, 2005). It has been suggested that both the amount of added nitrite and the amount of nitrite present as residual nitrite at the time of temperature abuse are important to antibotulinal protection. Because ingoing nitrite is depleted over time in cured meat, the importance of ingoing nitrite is probably due to the increased residual nitrite that results. Christiansen (1980), in a review of botulinal inhibition by nitrite, concluded "that any change in nitrite usage which reduces the level of residual nitrite or increases the rate of nitrite depletion could increase the above mentioned (botulinal) theoretical risk".

The issue for processed meats that utilize natural sources of nitrate is that the true amount of nitrite formed is unknown and impossible to measure because nitrite reacts quickly with meat components. While the amount of detectable residual nitrite in these products is significant, it is often less than that found in nitrite-cured products (Sindelar et al., in press a, in press b) depending on processing conditions. On the other hand, the nitrite reactions means that there are variable pools of nitrite-modified compounds in cured meat that remain available as reactive sources of nitric oxide (Kanner & Juven, 1980; Møller & Skibsted, 2002). Consequently, the microbial safety of processed meats manufactured with natural sources of nitrate is very difficult to assess without microbiological challenge studies. This is a very significant current research need for effectively assessing the safety of these products.

The second potential safety issue that should be considered with these products is the implications of higher-than-usual nitrite concentrations. Sindelar et al. (in press a) found that a frankfurter-style sausage processed with 0.4% celery powder and an extended incubation time resulted in significantly more residual nitrite than a nitrite-cured control throughout 90 days of storage. Elevated residual nitrite in bacon is a potential risk for nitrosamine formation and actual ingoing nitrite concentrations need to be carefully controlled to avoid this potential problem. The nature of the time–temperature relationship for reduction of nitrate to nitrite by a starter culture makes the concentration of nitrite a variable entity. Further, vegetable products are recognized as extremely variable in nitrate content as a result of different environmental conditions that occur during plant growth (National Academy of Sciences, 1981). Consequently, more information is needed on the best means by which to control nitrite formation in processed meats manufactured with natural sources of nitrate to assure that excess concentrations of nitrite do not become a safety issue.

References

Archer, D. L. (2002). Evidence that ingested nitrate and nitrite are beneficial to health. *Journal of Food Protection, 65*, 872–875.

Bacus, J. (2006). Natural ingredients for cured and smoked meats. In *Proceedings of the 59th reciprocal meat conference* (pp. 77–78), June 18–21, 2006. Champaign-Urbana, IL, USA.

Baseler, L. J. (2007) Unpublished data. Iowa State University, Ames, IA, USA.

Binkerd, E. F., & Kolari, O. E. (1975). The history and use of nitrate and nitrite in the curing of meat. *Food and Cosmetics Toxicology, 13*, 655–661.

Bourn, D., & Prescott, J. (2002). A comparison of the nutritional value, sensory qualities and food safety of organically and conventionally produced foods. *Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition, 42*(1), 1–34.

Cantoni, C., Berretta, G., & Bianchi, M. A. (1978). Ammonia, nitrites and nitrates in sodium chloride. *Archivio Veterinario Italiano, 29*(5/6), 166–167 (Italian with English summary).

Casaburi, A., Blaiotta, G., Mauriello, G., Pepe, O., & Villani, F. (2005). Technological activities of *Staphylococcus carnosus* and *Staphylococcus simulans* strains isolated from fermented sausages. *Meat Science, 71*, 643–650.

Cassens, R. G. (1990). *Nitrite-cured meat*. Trumbull, CT: Food and Nutrition Press, Inc.

Cassens, R. G. (1997a). Composition and safety of cured meats in the USA. *Food Chemistry, 59*, 561–566.

Cassens, R. G. (1997b). Residual nitrite in cured meat. *Food Technology, 51*(2), 53–55.

Christiansen, L. N. (1980). Factors influencing botulinal inhibition by nitrite. *Food Technology, 34*(5), 237–239.

Code of Federal Regulations. (2006). Animals and animal products. 9 CFR 317.17, 9 CFR 319.2 and 9 CFR 424.21-23. Washington, DC. <http://www.access.gpo.gov/nara/cfr/waisidx_06/9cfrv2_06.html#301>. Accessed 28.12.06.

Cornforth, D. P., & Jayasingh, P. (2004). Colour and pigment. In W. K. Jensen, C. Devine, & M. Dikeman (Eds.), *Encyclopedia of meat sciences* (pp. 249–256). Oxford, UK: Elsevier Ltd.

Coughlin, J. R. (2006). Update on International Agency for Research on Cancer monograph on ingested nitrite and nitrate. In *Proceedings of the meat industry research conference*. <http://www.meatscience.orgPubs/mircarchiv/2006/default.htm>. Accessed 30.12..06. October 4–5, 2006, Hollywood, FL, USA.

Devcich, D. A., Pedersen, I. K., & Petrie, K. J. (2007). You are what you eat: Modern health worries and the acceptance of natural and synthetic additives in functional foods. *Appetite, 48*, 333–337.

Dreezens, E., Martijn, C., Tenbult, P., Kok, G., & deVries, N. K. (2005). Food and values: an examination of values underlying attitudes toward genetically-modified and organically grown food products. *Appetite, 44*, 115–122.

Fox, J. B., Jr., Sebranek, J. G., & Phillips, J. G. (1994). Kinetic analysis of the formation of nitrosylmyoglobin. *Journal of Muscle Foods, 5*, 15–25.

Heinerman, J., & Anderson, G. (2001). *Salt: Nature's fifth element*. Chico, CA: Ocean Press International.

Herrador, M. A., Sayago, A., Rosales, D., & Asuero, A. G. (2005). Analysis of a sea salt from the Mediterranean Sea. *Alimentaria, 360*, 85–90.

Honikel, K. O. (2004). Curing agents. In W. K. Jensen, C. Devine, & M. Dikeman (Eds.), *Encyclopedia of meat sciences* (pp. 195–201). Oxford, UK: Elsevier Ltd.

Husak, R. L. (2007). A survey of commercially available broilers originating from organic, free-range, and conventional production

systems for meat yield, composition and relative value. M.S. thesis, Iowa State University, Ames, IA, USA.

Kanner, J., & Juven, B. J. (1980). S-nitrosocysteine as an antioxidant, color-developing and anticlostridial agent in comminuted turkey meat. *Journal of Food Science, 45*, 1105–1108, 1112.

Kuhnlein, H. V. (1980). The trace element content of indigenous salts compared with commercially refined substitutes. *Ecology of Food and Nutrition, 10*(2), 113–121.

MacDonald, B., Gray, J. I., Kakuda, Y., & Lee, M. L. (1980). Role of nitrite in cured meat flavor: Chemical analysis. *Journal of Food Science, 45*, 889–892.

MacDonald, B., Gray, J. I., Stanley, D. W., & Usborne, W. R. (1980). Role of nitrite in cured meat flavor: sensory analysis. *Journal of Food Science, 45*, 885–888, 904.

MacDonald, B., Gray, J. I., & Gibbins, L. N. (1980). Role of nitrite in cured meat flavor: Antioxidant role of nitrite. *Journal of Food Science, 45*, 893–897.

Milkowski, A. L. (2006). The controversy about sodium nitrite. In *Proceedings of the meat industry research conference*. <http://www.meatscience.org/Pubs/mircarchiv/2006/default.htm>. Accessed 30.12.06. October 4–5, 2006, Hollywood, FL, USA.

Mitchell, R. (2006). Outrunning supplies. *Meat and Deli Retailer*. November, 2006. <http://www.meatanddeliretailer.com>. Accessed 28.12.06.

Møller, J. K. S., & Skibsted, L. H. (2002). Nitric oxide and myoglobins. *Chemical Reviews, 102*, 1167–1178.

Møller, J. K. S., Jakobsen, M., Weber, C. J., Martinussen, T., Skibsted, L. H., & Bertelsen, G. (2003). Optimization of colour stability of cured ham during packaging and retail display by a multifactorial design. *Meat Science, 63*, 169–175.

Morrissey, P. A., & Techivangana, J. Z. (1985). The antioxidant activities of nitrite and nitrosylmyoglobin in cooked meats. *Meat Science, 14*, 175–190.

National Academy of Sciences (1981). *The health effects of nitrate, nitrite and n-nitroso compounds*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

National Academy of Sciences (1982). *Alternatives to the current use of nitrite in foods*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

O'Connor, M. E. (2006). Natural raising claims – a discussion of current natural regulations and outlook towards the future. In *Proceedings of the meat industry research conference*. <http://www.meatscience.org/Pubs/mircarchiv/2006/default.htm>. Accessed 30.12.06. October 4–5, 2006, Hollywood, FL, USA.

Olesen, P. T., Meyer, A. S., & Stahnke, L. H. (2004). Generation of flavor compounds in fermented sausages – the influence of curing ingredients, *Staphylococcus* starter culture and ripening time. *Meat Science, 66*, 675–687.

Organic Trade Association. (2006). OTA Manufacturer Survey – Summary. <http://www.ota.com>. Accessed 28.12.06.

Pegg, R. B., & Shahidi, F. (2000). *Nitrite curing of meat. The n-nitrosamine problem and nitrite alternatives*. Trumbull, CT: Food and Nutrition Press, Inc.

Peters, J. M., Preston-Martin, S., London, S. J., Bowman, J. D., Buckley, J. D., & Thomas, D. C. (1994). Processed meats and risk of childhood leukemia (California, USA). *Cancer Causes and Control, 5*, 195–202.

Petrak, L. (2005). Retailers go natural. *Meat and Deli Retailer*. December, 2005. <http://www.meatanddeliretailer.com>. Accessed 30.12.06.

Pierson, M. D., & Smoot, L. A. (1982). Nitrite, nitrite alternatives and the control of *Clostridium botulinum* in cured meats. *Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition, 17*, 141–187.

Preston-Martin, S., & Lijinsky, W. (1994). Cured meats and childhood cancer (Letters to the Editor). *Cancer Causes and Control, 5*, 484–485.

Preston-Martin, S., Pogoda, J. M., Mueller, B. A., Holly, E. A., Lijinsky, W., & Davis, R. L. (1996). Maternal consumption of cured meats and vitamins in relation to pediatric brain tumors. *Cancer Epidemiology, 5*, 599–605.

Saher, M., Lindeman, M., & Hursti, U.-K. K. (2006). Attitudes toward genetically modified and organic foods. *Appetite, 46*, 324–331.

Saltworks. (2006). Salt information. <http://www.saltworks.us/salt_info/si_gourmet_reference.asp>. Accessed 5.1.07.

Sarasua, S., & Savitz, D. A. (1994). Cured and broiled meat consumption in relation to childhood cancer: Denver, Colorado (United States). *Cancer Causes and Control, 5*, 141–148.

Sebranek, J. G. (1979). Advances in the technology of nitrite use and consideration of alternatives. *Food Technology, 33*(7), 58–62, 93.

Sebranek, J. G. (2006). Unpublished data.

Sebranek, J. G., & Fox, J. B. Jr., (1985). A review of nitrite and chloride chemistry: Interactions and implications for cured meats. *Journal of the Science of Food and Agriculture, 36*, 1169–1182.

Sebranek, J. G., & Fox, J. B. Jr., (1991). Rate of nitric oxide formation from nitrite as affected by chloride ion concentration. *Journal of Muscle Foods, 2*, 149–163.

Siderer, Y., Maquet, A., & Anklam, E. (2005). Need for research to support consumer confidence in the growing organic food market. *Trends in Food Science and Technology, 16*, 332–343.

Sindelar, J. J. (2006a). Investigating uncured no-nitrate-or-nitrite-added processed meat products. Ph.D. thesis. Iowa State University, Ames, IA, USA.

Sindelar, J. J. (2006b). Unpublished data. Iowa State University, Ames, IA, USA.

Sindelar, J. J., Cordray, J. C., Sebranek, J. G., Love, J. A., & Ahn, D. U. (in press a). Effects of varying levels of vegetable juice powder and incubation time on color, residual nitrate and nitrite, pigment, pH and sensory attributes of ready-to-eat uncured, emulsified frankfurter-style cooked sausage. *Journal of Food Science*.

Sindelar, J. J., Cordray, J. C., Sebranek, J. G., Love, J. A., & Ahn, D. U. (in press b). Effects of varying levels of vegetable juice powder and incubation time on color, residual nitrate and nitrite, pigment, pH and sensory attributes of ready-to-eat uncured ham. *Journal of Food Science*.

Stamler, J. S., & Meissner, G. (2001). Physiology of nitric oxide in skeletal muscle. *Physiology Reviews, 81*, 209–237.

Tompkin, R. B. (2005). Nitrite. In P. M. Davidson, J. N. Sofos, & A. L. Branen (Eds.), *Antimicrobials in food* (3rd ed.). Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, Taylor & Frances Group.

USDA. (1995). Processing Inspector's Calculations Handbook (FSIS Directive 7620.3). <http://www.fsis.usda.gov/OPPDE/rdad/FSISDirectives/7620-3.pdf>. Accessed 3.1.07.

USDA. (2005). Food standards and labeling policy book. <www.fsis.usda.gov/OPPDE/larc/Policies/Labeling_Policy_Book_082005.pdf>. Accessed 27.12.06.

Winter, C. K., & Davis, S. F. (2006). Organic foods. *Journal of Food Science, 71*(9), R117–R124.